

THE STORY OF  
**OLD EUROPE**  
AND  
**YOUNG AMERICA**

MACE  
TANNER

Rand McNally & Company





Class D 103

Book M 3

Copyright No. 1915

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.





# THE STORY OF OLD EUROPE AND YOUNG AMERICA

By WILLIAM H. MACE

*Professor of History in Syracuse University. Author  
of "A School History of the United States,"  
"A Primary History," "A Beginner's  
History," "Method in History"*

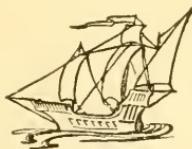
and

EDWIN P. TANNER

*Associate Professor of History in Syracuse  
University*

*Illustrated by*

HOMER W. COLBY, B. F. WILLIAMSON,  
and FRANK T. MERRILL



RAND McNALLY & COMPANY  
CHICAGO

NEW YORK

*Copyright, 1915,*  
By RAND McNALLY & COMPANY

D 102  
M 3  
1915



\$0.65

AUG 30 1915  
© G.L.A 411310

720 1.

# THE TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	
Why Americans Should Know about Europe . . . . .	1
How Europe Looks To-Day . . . . .	2
America Unknown to the People of Ancient Times; Early Ideas of Geography . . . . .	6
Why the First European Colonists Came to America . . . . .	9
How America Receives European Immigrants To-day . . . . .	11
<b>WHAT THE EASTERN NATIONS GAVE</b>	
How the Earliest Men in Europe Lived . . . . .	13
Civilization Begins in Egypt . . . . .	14
Asia, Too, Has Early Civilized Peoples . . . . .	20
How the Hebrews and Phoenicians Helped Civilization . . . . .	22
<b>WHAT THE GREEKS GAVE IN STORIES AND MYTHS</b>	
What We Owe to the Greeks . . . . .	24
Where the Greeks Lived . . . . .	26
The Religion of the Greeks; Gods and Goddesses . . . . .	29
The Deeds of the Heroes . . . . .	31
The Siege of Troy . . . . .	33
<b>HOW THE GREEKS TAUGHT MEN TO BE FREE</b>	
How the Greeks Governed Themselves . . . . .	37
Athenians and Spartans . . . . .	39
Things Which Brought the Greeks Together . . . . .	44
Greece Attacked by the Persians . . . . .	46
The Battle of Marathon . . . . .	47
How the Spartans Held the Pass at Thermopylae . . . . .	50
How Greece Was Saved . . . . .	53
<b>SOME THINGS THE CITY OF ATHENS TAUGHT THE WORLD</b>	
The Age of Pericles Begins . . . . .	56
How Athens Looked in the Age of Pericles . . . . .	56
Socrates, the Philosopher . . . . .	61
<b>HOW THE GREEKS FAILED</b>	
The Decline of Greece . . . . .	63
How Philip of Macedon Gained Power . . . . .	64
The Youth of Alexander the Great . . . . .	65
How Alexander Carried Greek Ideas into Asia . . . . .	67
The End of Alexander's Empire . . . . .	69
The Spread of Hellenistic Civilization; Wonders of Alexandria . . . . .	70
<b>THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME</b>	
The Early Days of Rome . . . . .	74
What the Roman Myths Tell . . . . .	77
The Plebeians Struggle for Their Rights . . . . .	80
The Gauls Take Rome . . . . .	82
<b>WHAT ROME GAINED BY CONQUEST</b>	
Hannibal Threatens Rome . . . . .	85
Romans Conquer All Nations . . . . .	89
Conquest Does Not Make Rome Better . . . . .	90

	PAGE
<b>HOW THE ROMAN REPUBLIC BECAME THE ROMAN EMPIRE</b>	
Caesar Appears . . . . .	94
Caesar Conquers Gaul and Quarrels with Pompey . . . . .	95
Caesar Makes Himself Master of Rome . . . . .	99
The Death of Caesar . . . . .	99
Caesar Augustus Rules . . . . .	101
What the Roman Empire Was . . . . .	102
<b>HOW THE ROMANS LIVED</b>	
How the City of Rome Looked . . . . .	105
What a Roman Triumph Meant . . . . .	109
Amusements of the Romans . . . . .	110
The Destruction of Pompeii . . . . .	112
Roman Houses . . . . .	114
How the Romans Lived . . . . .	116
<b>NEW THOUGHTS IN ROME</b>	
Great Roman Writers . . . . .	120
The Coming of Christianity . . . . .	124
How the Early Christians Were Treated . . . . .	125
Christianity Triumphs . . . . .	126
<b>THE DOWNFALL OF ROME</b>	
The Decline of the Roman Empire . . . . .	130
The Downfall of Rome . . . . .	132
<b>THE COMING OF THE TEUTONS</b>	
What Kind of People the Early Germans Were . . . . .	135
Conquests of the German Tribes . . . . .	139
Britain Conquered by the Angles and Saxons . . . . .	141
<b>HOW THE TEUTONS LEARNED FROM ROME</b>	
The Germans Become Christians . . . . .	145
How Missionaries Taught the Germans . . . . .	147
Who the Monks Were . . . . .	149
Charles the Great Revives Civilization . . . . .	154
The Coming of the Northmen . . . . .	158
<b>HOW ENGLAND WAS MADE</b>	
Alfred the Great Withstands the Danes . . . . .	162
Alfred's Works of Peace . . . . .	166
The Normans Conquer England . . . . .	167
How Henry II Kept Order in England . . . . .	172
King John and Magna Carta . . . . .	176
How Parliament Grew . . . . .	180
<b>THE NOBLES OF THE MIDDLE AGES</b>	
Classes of People in the Middle Ages . . . . .	185
How the Nobles Lived . . . . .	186
Warfare in the Middle Ages . . . . .	188
Warlike Games of the Nobles; the Tournament . . . . .	189
What Feudalism Was . . . . .	190
Chivalry and Knighthood . . . . .	194
<b>THE PEOPLE IN THE MIDDLE AGES</b>	
How the People Lived . . . . .	197
How the Towns Grew . . . . .	202
Industry in the Towns . . . . .	204
The Beginnings of Commerce . . . . .	208

*The Table of Contents*

	PAGE
<b>THE CHURCH IN THE MIDDLE AGES</b>	
The Churches of the Middle Ages . . . . .	215
The Clergy and the Pope . . . . .	218
<b>THE PILGRIMS AND THE CRUSADES</b>	
People Who Were Called Pilgrims . . . . .	221
The Cultured Arabs and the Fierce Turks . . . . .	225
How the Crusades Began . . . . .	226
The First Trained Army . . . . .	229
The Wonderful Spear . . . . .	230
How the Crusaders Acted . . . . .	232
The Second Crusade . . . . .	234
The Third Crusade . . . . .	234
Richard and Saladin Good Friends . . . . .	237
The Story of the King's Friend . . . . .	238
Later Crusades . . . . .	239
What the Crusades Did . . . . .	240
<b>MARCO POLO'S GREAT JOURNEY AND HIS BOOK</b>	
The Polos' Visit to China . . . . .	244
<b>INVENTIONS OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY</b>	
Early Inventions . . . . .	247
Invention of Printing . . . . .	248
The Compass . . . . .	249
Discovery of Gunpowder and Invention of Cannon . . . . .	250
<b>THE RACE FOR INDIA BEGINS BETWEEN PORTUGAL AND SPAIN</b>	
Prince Henry, the Navigator, Seeks an All-Water Route to India . . . . .	252
Christopher Columbus, Seeking India, Finds America . . . . .	254
Columbus Seeks Aid . . . . .	255
The Discovery of America . . . . .	257
The Return to Spain . . . . .	261
Other Voyages to America . . . . .	262
Voyage of the Northmen . . . . .	262
<b>SPANISH EXPLORERS OF THE NEW WORLD</b>	
Why America Was Named for Americus Vespuceius . . . . .	265
Balboa Discovers the Pacific . . . . .	266
Magellan Begins His Great Voyage . . . . .	267
Cortés Invades Mexico . . . . .	269
A Wonderful Indian City . . . . .	270
The Conquest of the Aztecs . . . . .	271
The Richest City in the World . . . . .	271
Pizarro Captures the Inca . . . . .	272
The Spaniards Find Untold Wealth . . . . .	273
De Soto's Expedition . . . . .	273
Discovery of the Mississippi . . . . .	274
Coronado and the Seven Cities of Cibolo . . . . .	275
Discovery of the Grand Cañon . . . . .	276
Discover Great Herds of Crooked-Back Oxen . . . . .	277
Meaning of Coronado's Expedition . . . . .	277
<b>OPPOSITION TO SLAVERY; THE FOUNDING OF MISSIONS</b>	
Las Casas, the Enemy of Human Slavery . . . . .	277
Missions from Peru to California . . . . .	279

	PAGE
<b>FRANCE AGAINST SPAIN IN EUROPE AND AMERICA</b>	
French Explorations . . . . .	282
The Story of Chevalier Bayard . . . . .	283
The French Claim to North America . . . . .	284
Huguenot Colony in Florida . . . . .	285
Champlain Founds New France . . . . .	288
New France Solidly Built . . . . .	289
<b>ENGLAND THE RIVAL OF SPAIN IN EUROPE AND AMERICA</b>	
John Cabot Seeks a Shorter Route to India and Finds North America . . . . .	290
The Quarrel between the King of England and the King of Spain . . . . .	291
The Great Leaders in the Conflict . . . . .	292
Henry VIII Becomes Head of the English Church . . . . .	293
Elizabeth's Plans, and the Puritans . . . . .	294
Elizabeth and Mary, Queen of Scots . . . . .	296
The Revolt of the Netherlands . . . . .	297
William the Silent . . . . .	299
Close of the Thirty Years' War . . . . .	303
<b>HOW THE ENGLISH SEA DOGS FOUGHT THE SPANISH SAILORS AND ROBBED THE SPANISH TREASURE SHIPS</b>	
The Beginnings of Trouble . . . . .	305
Sir Francis Drake . . . . .	305
The First Englishman to Circumnavigate the Globe . . . . .	306
"Singeing the Spanish King's Beard" . . . . .	307
The Coming of the Great Armada . . . . .	308
A Great Sea Fight . . . . .	309
A Crushing Defeat . . . . .	309
How Sir Walter Raleigh Won the Queen's Favor . . . . .	310
Raleigh Tries to Plant Colonies in America . . . . .	311
The Meaning of the Battle with Spain . . . . .	313
France and England Fight for Control . . . . .	313

## A LIST OF THE MAPS

	PAGE
Modern Europe . . . . .	<i>between</i> 4 and 5
The Mediterranean in Ancient Times . . . . .	6
Map of the Ancient World (about 50 A.D.) . . . . .	8
Greater Greece and the Phoenician Colonies . . . . .	<i>between</i> 26 and 27
The Greek Peninsula . . . . .	38
The City of Athens and its Harbor of Piraeus . . . . .	58
The Empire of Alexander the Great . . . . .	71
A Physical Map of Italy . . . . .	75
The Roman Empire at Its Greatest Extent . . . . .	<i>between</i> 102 and 103
Europe in the time of Charles the Great . . . . .	<i>between</i> 156 and 157
England under the Heptarchy . . . . .	163
The Danelagh (or Danelaw) . . . . .	165
Medieval Trade Routes to the North from the Mediterranean .	<i>facing</i> 212
The Routes of the Crusaders . . . . .	233
Ancient and Medieval Trade Routes to the Orient . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 242
Map Showing the Route of Marco Polo's Journey . . . . .	244
The Race for India . . . . .	253
The Discoveries of the Northmen . . . . .	262
Spanish Voyages of Discovery to North America . . . . .	265
Routes of French and English Voyagers to America . . . . .	268



## THE PREFACE

THIS little book is an attempt to provide for the sixth grade a suitable text on the European background of American history. The subject matter is of course suggested very largely by the Report of the Committee of Eight of the American Historical Association on the Study of History in Elementary Schools. In endeavoring to work out a plan based on the suggestions of this report, however, the authors have felt very keenly that while the "letter killeth, the spirit giveth life." Our object has been to provide a narrative which will make the past live and, while omitting nothing essential, hold the interest of children of from ten to twelve years. We must rest our case largely on our ability to "spin a good yarn."

As the limitations of the present curriculum are such that no other opportunity is offered in the elementary school for the study of the development of Europe, we have tried, in this little volume, to trace the chain of circumstances leading to the colonization of America, and further, to give some notion of a few of the chief landmarks in the development of world-civilization.

Because our book is for children the picture presented is necessarily in very broad outline. We have endeavored not to fail in the matter of accuracy. Yet we feel that many details of interest to mature students can have no place here. The consideration of such things as the tactics of the Persians at Marathon or the question as to how far Simon de Montfort was actually the founder of the House of Commons must be deferred for the student's later investigation. We hope that our young readers will some day wish to know all about these matters.

In adding a brief chapter on Egypt and the Oriental nations we have kept within the spirit of the report of the Committee of Eight. This supplementary material is not specifically required by that report, and it may be omitted without great detriment to the rest of the book. Its insertion, however, will give a glimpse at those earlier civilizations which form a background for much that follows.

The authors' close association during many years has, we trust, enabled them to work for a common object and to avoid some of the evils of mixed workmanship. It should be stated that Mr. Mace is author of that part of the book treating of the rise of the modern nations, and the discoverers; and Mr. Tanner of the account of the ancient and the medieval world.

Our thanks are due to our colleagues, Doctors H. L. Cleasby and A. W. Lauber, for reading the first part of the manuscript and giving valuable advice. We have also obtained most important suggestions from a study of earlier textbooks in our field.

Whether or not we have succeeded in a task calling for a high degree of pedagogical skill, only the actual use of our little book can determine.

W.H.M.  
E.P.T.

#### EXTRACTS FROM THE REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE OF EIGHT

The following extracts from the "Report of the American Historical Association, by the Committee of Eight" clearly indicate the principal ideas of the Committee's report and form the basis of the sixth-grade work provided by this book.

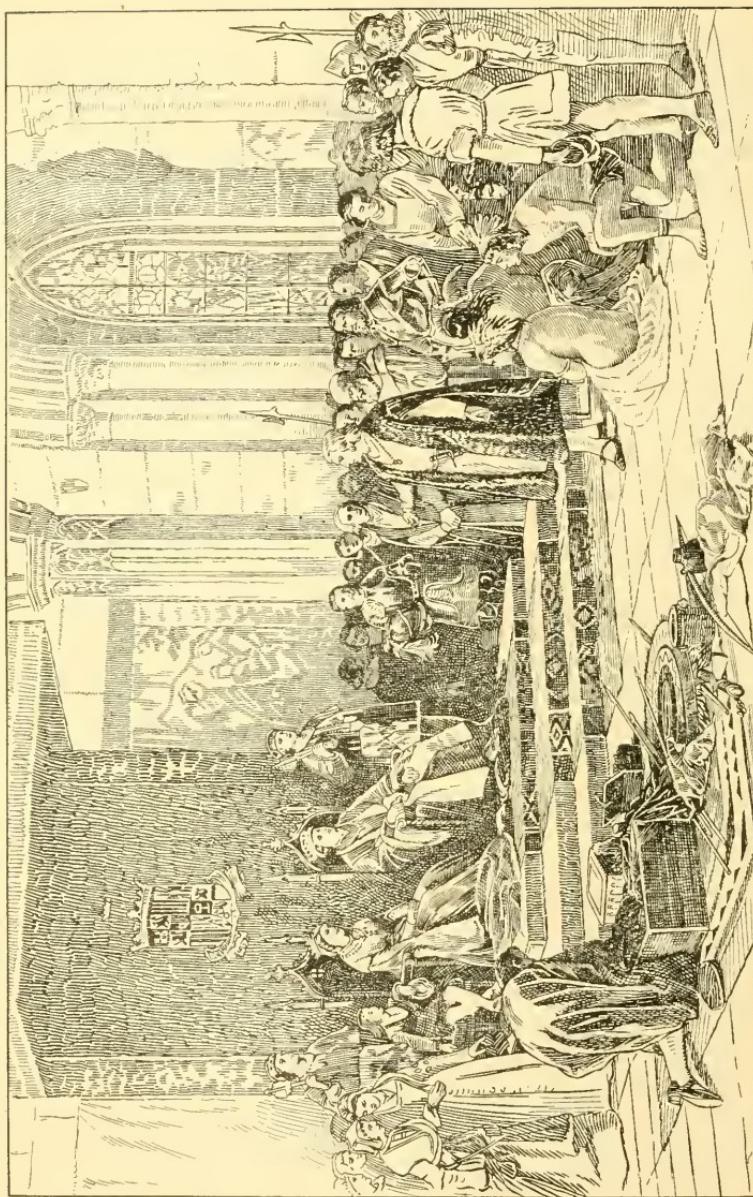
"The history-teaching in the elementary schools should be focused upon American History. But we do not mean to imply that American History signifies an account only of those events which have occurred in America. Our aim is to explain

the America of to-day; its civilization, its institutions, and its traditions. America cannot be understood without taking into account the history of its peoples before they crossed the Atlantic.

"In the list of topics submitted for the sixth grade, those features of ancient and of medieval life have been illustrated which explain other important elements of our civilization or which show how the movement for discovery and colonization originated. A few great incidents and typical characters of the ancient and the medieval world have been added because their stories are a part of the universal heritage of mankind. In medieval history special emphasis is laid upon England. It is not at all the intention to teach Greek, Roman, or medieval history, though some of the topics are selected from these fields.

"In outlining the work suitable for this grade, we were governed by the following considerations: first, the desire to emphasize geographical facts, not only those which form a part of the history of the discoveries of the fifteenth and the sixteenth century, but also the simpler incidents of previous geographical discovery; second, the effort to put the facts connected with the emigration to America in their relation to earlier movements of peoples; third, the aim to show, in a very simple way, the civilizations which were the heritage of those who came to America,—that is, to explain what America started with; fourth, to associate the three or four peoples of Europe that were to have a share in American colonization, with enough of the characteristic incidents of their history to give the child some feeling for the names 'England,' 'Spain,' 'Holland,' and 'France.'

"If the unity of the general theme, particularly in the sixth grade, can be realized by some other treatment in individual instances, by omission or by more detailed work, this will not interfere with the aim of the plan."



After the painting by Ricardo Balaca

THE RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS AT BARCELONA

# THE STORY OF OLD EUROPE AND YOUNG AMERICA

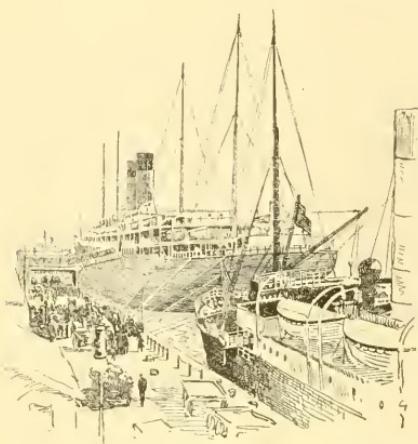
## INTRODUCTION

**i. Why Americans Should Know about Europe.** Across the Atlantic Ocean, with its three thousand miles of tossing green waves, lie the old homes of the people who now inhabit America. The emigrants who came yesterday in the mighty steamships which now rush across the ocean in a few days, and the early settlers who reached this continent three hundred years ago in their frail, old-fashioned sailing vessels, came alike from Europe, where their forefathers had lived for many hundreds, perhaps thousands, of years.

In the gray wilderness which once covered America the early colonists and their children have built up a new and great nation of whose splendid history and noble men and women all Americans are justly proud. Beneath its starry flag the newcomers to this country, if they are earnest and intelligent, find a welcome to many things which crowded Europe cannot give.

Yet we cannot rightly understand or appreciate how the people who came to these shores felt, what they tried to do, and how they worked to bring it about, unless we know at least a little of the story of the old home they

left behind. Even three hundred years ago the men and women who reached America knew and believed many things which can be explained only by their life in Europe. The new arrivals of the present day, soon to be our fellow citizens, also bring many strange ideas and customs which are the result of their life across the water.



From a photograph

LOADING A STEAMSHIP BOUND FOR BRITISH  
COLONIES

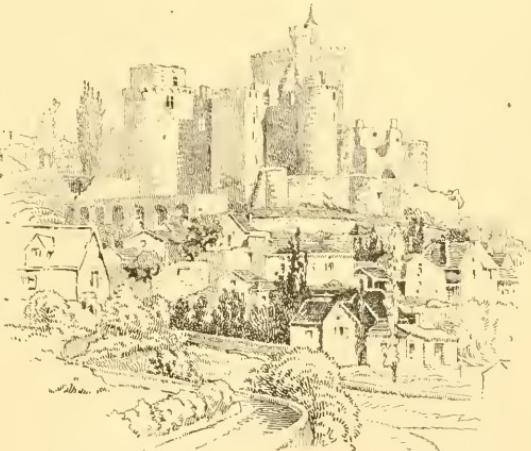
things, some natural, some the work of men of olden time,—objects made famous by song and story,—which help to explain the history of our own forefathers.

**2. How Europe Looks To-Day.** Here are the brave little British Isles with their great smoky manufacturing cities set amid green country, a land proud of its free government, which the sturdy men who dwell there have upheld for centuries against every attack. To their seaports come great fleets from all parts of the vast British Empire across the seas, for men of British race have conquered or colonized many wide regions in Asia, Africa, America, and Australia. The American may be proud that the first colonists of his country came from this sturdy little land, and that we speak the English tongue.

Across the British Channel lies "fair France," the home of everything beautiful. Here rise the roofs and spires of Paris, most famous of modern cities, for centuries the very center of refinement and culture. On every side stretch smiling fields, small to the eyes of an American, but fertile and well tilled, showing the industry and care of an intelligent people. Yet now and again the observant traveler may still see remains of walls and towers, grim even in decay, which tell of a time when war reigned and when fierce lords tyrannized over unfortunate peasants.

Eastward over the Rhine stretches the mighty German Empire, the dear "Fatherland" of thousands who are now Americans. No wonder her people love her, for Germany is the land of great scholars, of splendid music, of harmless gayety, and beautiful indeed she is with her quaint old towns and her bold, wooded hills. From the bustle of her cities

and the smoke of her factories it is easy to see that Germany has a great future. But the ruined castles which crown her hills, the crumbling walls which still surround some of her older towns, even the thousands of well-

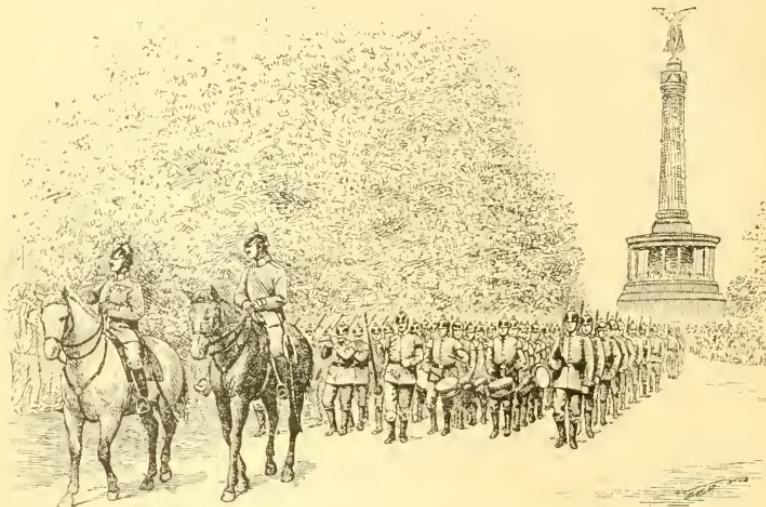


From a photograph

RUINS OF CHATEAU DE BOUGUIL, A CASTLE IN FRANCE

drilled soldiers whom one sees on every hand, show that she has had hard struggles in the past.

To the south, over the snow-capped Alps, is "sunny Italy" with her blue sky, her green vineyards, and her



From a photograph

GERMAN SOLDIERS ON PARADE IN BERLIN

light-hearted people. Here most of all one sees great monuments of the past, for Rome, the "Eternal City," was once mistress of the world. The remains of her vast temples, palaces, and theaters, beautiful even in their ruin, speak of that distant time when Rome gave laws to all nations. Smooth white roads and great stone aqueducts, in some cases still in use, bear witness also to the skill of Roman engineers and workmen in the years when even Germany was yet a forest. Nor must we forget the beautiful cathedrals and churches, of much more recent date but still old, which men have never ceased to admire.

Still farther to the east lies Greece, a small land to be sure, but beautified by the monuments of a yet earlier





L'ordre de Vincennes

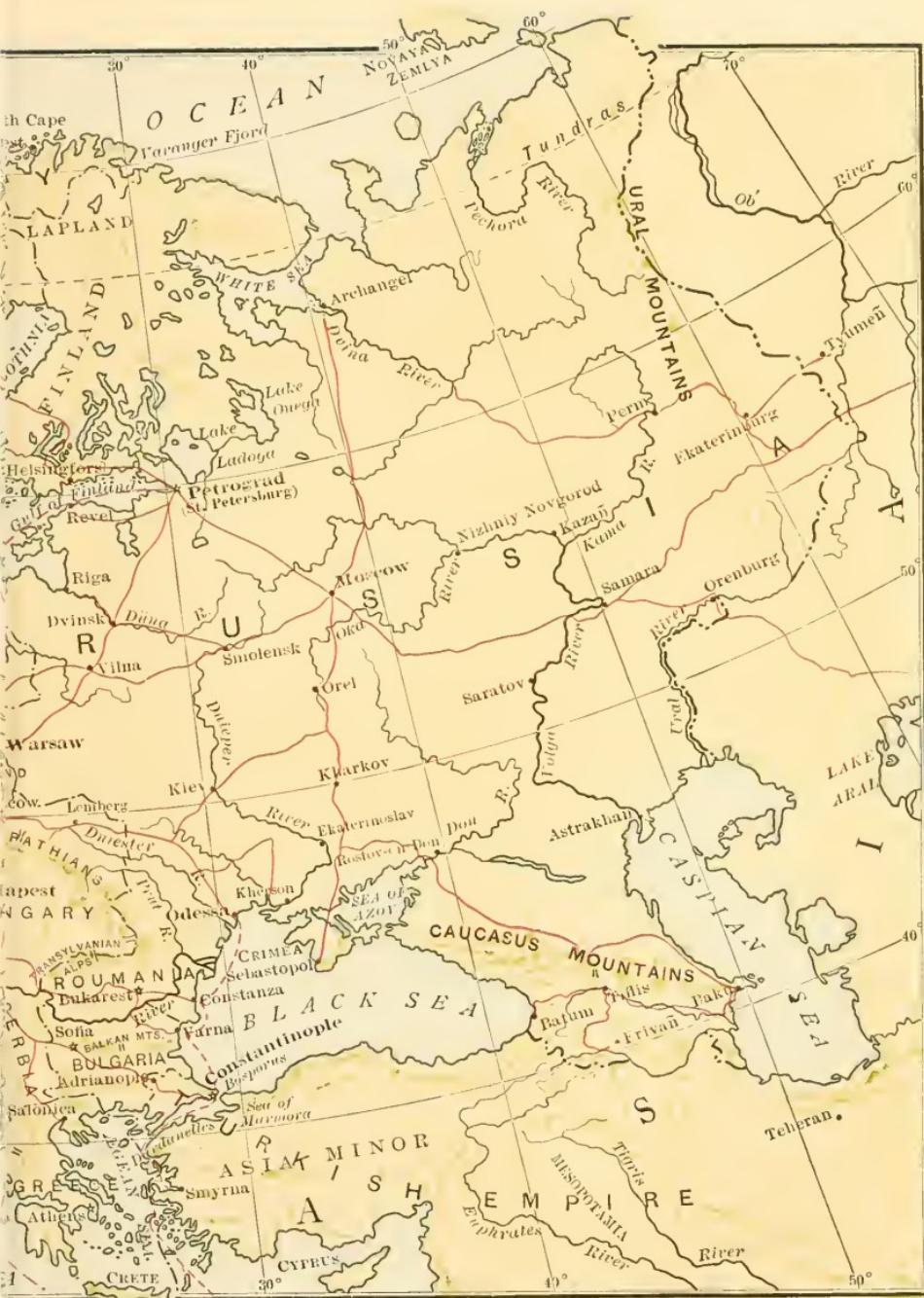
10

## A F

**I C A**  
Longitude East of Greenwich

**MALTA**  
(Br.)

MODER



EUROPE

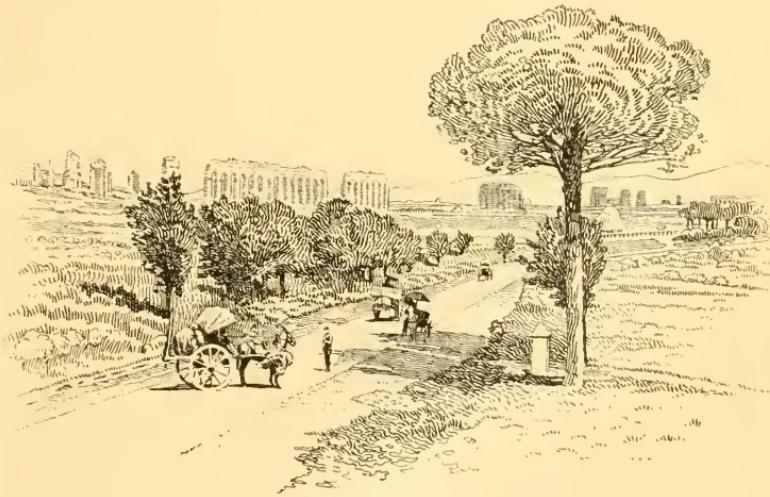
Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company



day when the wisest men of the world walked the streets of Athens.

South of Italy and Greece is the blue Mediterranean Sea. This once occupied the very center of the civilized world, for in ancient times western Asia and northern Africa were also the homes of important peoples.

To-day unhappy Europe is ablaze with war. Places made sacred by the great struggles and the triumphs of the past are once more shaken by the tramp of thousands of marching men and lighted by the red flashes of artillery. On all sides are destruction, misery, and death. To those who are suffering in this awful conflict the sympathy of Americans goes out. However, since all the people of Europe are our friends, the United States



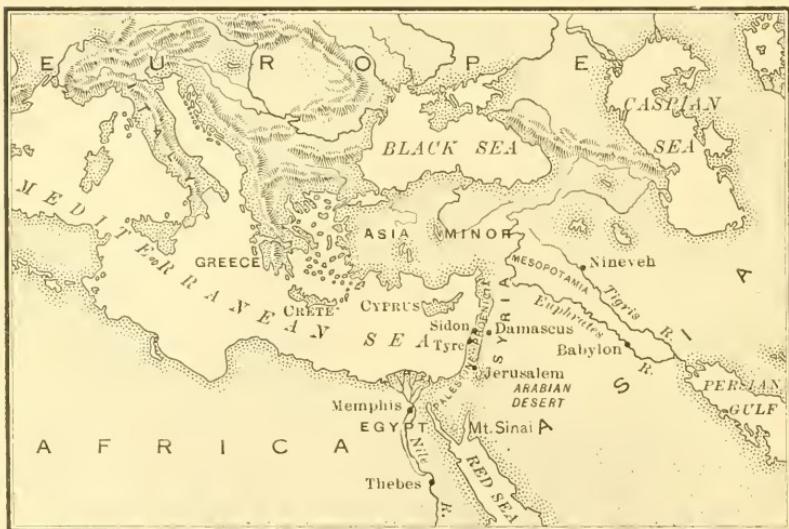
THE APPIAN WAY TO-DAY

*This is the most famous of ancient Roman roads. In the background are the arches of a great stone aqueduct built 400 years later than the roadway*

can have no part in the struggle except to send food to the starving and relief to the wounded of both sides.

We can only hope that while this little book is being printed the terrible war will come to an end, and the brave soldiers return to their homes to enjoy a long peace. May it bring an equal blessing to all of our sister nations beyond the sea!

History cannot yet tell the story of this war, for no one knows what its results will be. At some future time writers will show what of good or ill it has brought to the



THE MEDITERRANEAN IN ANCIENT TIMES

people of Europe and of America. In this volume we must be content to study the story of European nations in the days gone by, that we may learn what America has already received from them.

**3. America Unknown to the People of Ancient Times; Early Ideas of Geography.** To thousands of the poor people of Europe, America now seems a wonderful land of promise. But the men of ancient times did not even

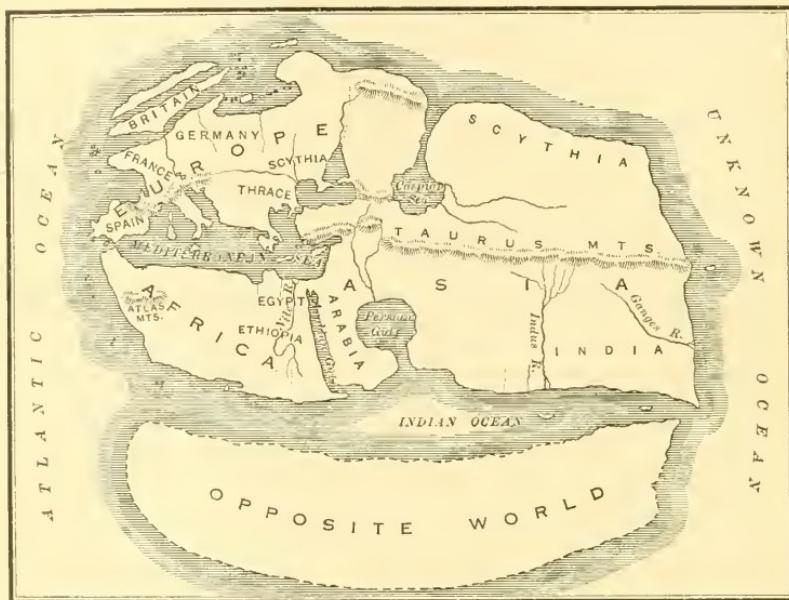
guess that beyond the Atlantic lay a great continent which should some day be known as America. When Greece and Rome were great, people had little knowledge of any lands except those near the Mediterranean Sea. Even some of these countries then bore names and were inhabited by peoples strange to us. The old Romans spoke, indeed, of Greece, Italy, and Germany, but France they called Gaul, and its people, Gauls; while distant England was Britannia, and its barbarous inhabitants, Britons.

About more remote lands the ancients had only vague ideas. The early Greeks did not comprehend that the earth is a sphere, but thought it to be shaped somewhat like a plate. Europe and Africa were in the middle, and around the outside flowed the ocean, which they believed to be like a great river.

Some of the best thinkers of Greece, however, later guessed that the earth is a globe. But of what lay beyond the shores of the Mediterranean even the Romans were still largely in ignorance. The most remote northern island in the Atlantic of which they had heard they called "Ultima Thule." Since they said Thule was north of the British Isles, this name probably meant the Shetland Islands. Beyond Thule the Greeks and Romans thought there was nothing but mist and fog.

The people who lived on the lower side of the earth, that is, in the Southern Hemisphere, the old writers called the "Antipodes," or people who walked with their feet upward. But of these Antipodes they really knew nothing, and some said that they could never be found, since the equator was surrounded by a ring of fire which no human being could pass.

For many centuries after Roman days the world learned little or nothing more about geography. But



Simplified from Pomponius Mela's *World*

MAP OF THE ANCIENT WORLD, ABOUT 50 A.D.

just before the time of Christopher Columbus sailors finally began to make longer voyages on the stormy Atlantic. People had found out, too, something about China, Japan, and other distant parts of Asia. Maps made by the best geographers of that day show that, since they knew nothing of America lying between, they thought it would be quite easy to sail across from Europe to the rich countries of Asia. The ocean they believed to be not very wide, and numerous islands would make the voyage easy.

Yet men did not make the attempt. Ignorant people still thought that the earth was flat. Others dreaded the

“burning tropics,” the blazing zone which the Romans had said surrounded the equator, or spoke in terror of a “sea of darkness” of unknown extent. Men noticed also that when a ship was in the distance, its hull disappeared first from sight. So some thought that vessels on the ocean were sailing downhill, and were afraid that if they went too far they could never get back.

When Columbus by his wonderful voyage at length showed that the ocean could be safely crossed and that curious lands lay on the other side, men did not even yet understand that he had found a new continent. It was some part of Asia, they thought, which the brave sailor had discovered. With such maps as they had this was a very natural mistake.

**4. Why the First European Colonists Came to America.** The first Europeans who came to America sought gold, silver, spices, and other treasure which would make them suddenly rich. In South America and Mexico the precious metals were soon discovered and seized. But to the early sailors the part of North America which is now the United States did not seem very attractive. It was only a wilderness inhabited by red Indians. Why should people from Europe risk their lives in such a wild region?

It was a long while before many did so. But Americans may well be proud of the reasons which finally brought English settlers to these shores. Why many of them came, a famous incident will show.

In the year 1620 a stanch little ship, the *Mayflower*, sailed from England and, buffeting the great waves of the Atlantic, made her way to the coast of Massachusetts. In her cabin was a little band of about one hundred brave

men and women. Unterrified by the wild and stern character of the shore and the pounding surf, they resolutely landed and built rude cabins.



From a model at Plymouth  
THE "MAYFLOWER"

Soon came the terrible northern winter, bringing cruel suffering. About half the party died from the hardship. But when spring came the brave band would not return to the comforts of Europe. The little settlement which they planted at Ply-

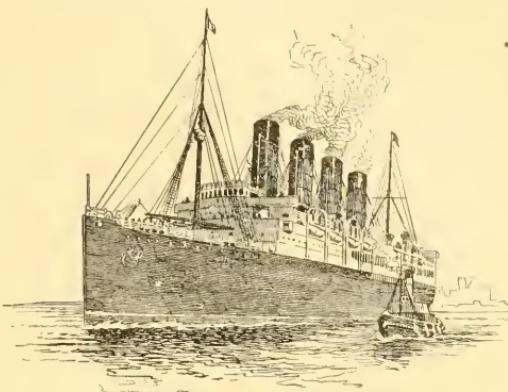
mouth, Massachusetts, remained to be one of the beginnings of our prosperous New England States.

Not for worldly gain did the Pilgrims, as the settlers of Plymouth are called, endure all these things. In those days people in Europe were not free, as they are now, to worship God in any way they thought right. England, like most other countries, had cruel laws which compelled all to go to one church or suffer heavy penalties. Rather than worship in a way they thought wrong, these sturdy men and women preferred to live in a bleak forest surrounded by savage men and beasts, and to endure any suffering which might be necessary. They loved America because it made them free.

Not all of the people who, three centuries ago, came to plant new homes upon our shores acted from such noble reasons. Yet very many of them faced the perils of the new land that they might worship more freely or escape

the tyrannical rule of the kings and princes of Europe.

We can never be too grateful to the memory of those fearless pioneers who by their sturdy labor cut down the great forests, laid out roads, bridged the rivers, and overcame the savage Indians, so that to-day America rivals in civilization and fertility the lands of the Old World.



A MODERN STEAMSHIP

### 5. How America Receives European Immigrants

**To-day.** When a great modern steamship with its huge funnels and high black hull glides into a busy American seaport like New York or Philadelphia, her decks are often crowded with hundreds of people from Europe who have come to seek their fortunes in our country. Perhaps there are still some among them from Russia or Turkey who, like the Pilgrims of old, have been harshly used because of their religion. But most of these immigrants now come that they may find more profitable work and a chance to live in greater comfort than is possible in the densely peopled lands they have left.

How different is the sight which meets their eyes from that which the brave colonists of three centuries ago had to face! Instead of a rough wilderness they see the tall buildings and handsome streets of a modern city, and feel the bustling life of a new and prosperous nation. In this life they, too, hope soon to share. But all has been

won for them by the strong men and courageous women of past days.

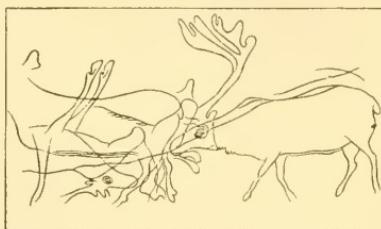
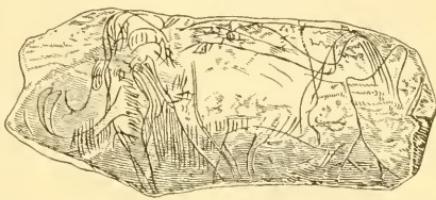
If they are of the stuff of which good Americans are made, the newcomers are welcome. But our country has no rewards for the idle or criminal. Before they are allowed to land, the immigrants are taken before officers of the government, who examine them carefully to see that their characters are good, that they have no dangerous disease, and that they are not likely to become paupers. Often weak or vicious people are sent back to Europe. Harsh does our law sometimes seem to such unfortunates, but America is not for them.

For the rest the door is open. From the great seaport screaming railway trains soon bear them to the cities or towns where they can find work or where they have chosen to begin the new life. But if they are poor they must be brave and strong, for though there are no more Indians to fight or fierce animals to slay, their lot may be almost as hard as that of the Pilgrims themselves. Perhaps the immigrants have no friends and cannot speak our language. They must work hard at rough labor. But if they are industrious they will soon rise. In a few years thousands find themselves far happier than they could ever have been in Europe, and their children may start life on equal terms with the descendants of the first colonists.

In this book, however, it is not our task to tell further of the life which the United States now gives. Rather do we seek to know something of the thoughts and ideas which had their beginnings long ago in Europe, and which the newcomers bring with them across the sea to America.

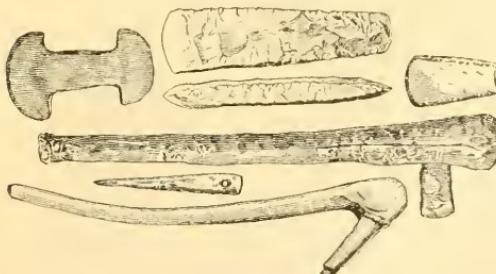
## WHAT THE EASTERN NATIONS GAVE

**6. How the Earliest Men in Europe Lived.** How long men have lived in Europe no one can say, for they dwelt there thousands of years before anybody knew how to write or to leave records. Of the wars, the journeys, the adventures of these earliest men we therefore know nothing. But of their character and way of life we can learn at least a little, for their weapons, their tools, their graves, even their pictures rudely scratched on bits of bone, have been found in many places.



RECORDS OF THE STONE AGE  
Scratched on bone by a cave-man

Rough savages they were at first, shivering in caves and woods, fighting tooth and nail with fierce animals like the mammoth and the cave bear, now starving wretchedly for days, now cramming their stomachs in savage feasting



WEAPONS AND TOOLS OF A CAVE-MAN

upon some slain beast. But ignorant and fierce as these shaggy cave-men were, they did not stand still. The

earliest tools discovered are of rough stone, clumsy, and almost without form. Later they found out how to shape and polish broken pieces of stone into arrowheads, axes, and hammers,—poor and weak indeed, but better than nothing. Finally metals were discovered: first bronze, long afterwards iron. With tools and weapons made of these metals, men became indeed masters over beasts and forests.

As the centuries rolled past, great inventions came,—how, we shall never know; perhaps it was often by accident. Men found how to make and use fire. They invented the bow and arrow. They learned to till the fields in rude ways. They tamed some of the animals. They learned to weave cloth. To early men, savage and ignorant, these things must have meant as much as did the discovery of the steam engine and the telegraph to people of our own time. When real history begins the people of Europe were no longer savages, though still barbarous and rough.

**7. Civilization Begins in Egypt.** But long before Europeans had become really civilized both Africa and Asia saw nations appear which led the way to knowledge. Almost opposite Greece,



A CAVE-MAN WITH WEAPONS



From Dopp's *Early Cave-men*  
A CAVE-MAN MAKING FIRE

to the south, in Africa, lies the wonderful land of Egypt. Here the traveler sees the remains of huge temples covered with mysterious picture writing, of strange statues and monuments, and above all, those gigantic pyramids which still fill the mind with awe. The men who built some of these things lived at least five thousand years ago, and probably long before that.

In early times men, if they are to learn, must have a fertile country, so that all their time need not be spent



THE PYRAMIDS OF GIZEH AND THE SPHINX

in seeking food. They must also be protected from their foes by mountains or deserts. Egypt both protected and nourished its people. On almost every side stretch wastes of sand, impassable for the armies of that early day. But though rain hardly ever falls in most of this strange land, Egypt itself is no desert. Through its heart runs the great river Nile. Every year this mighty stream rises in flood, overflows the fields which lie along its banks, and then goes down again, leaving the land covered with rich mud, just the thing to produce great crops of grain. The ancient Egyptians, moreover, knew

## A PORTION OF THE ROSETTA STONE

This reproduction shows the three different texts in which the story on the Rosetta Stone is told. The Greek text, the key to all Egyptian writings, is at the bottom. The Stone is now in the British Museum, London.



how, with cunning skill, to catch the water of the Nile in reservoirs, and to direct it by means of ditches to points where it would do the most good.

Of the early history of Egypt modern people long knew very little that they could be sure was true. The great Egyptian monuments were indeed covered with strange black and red picture writing, which seemed to tell a great story, but no one could read it.

But at last a queer black stone was dug up near one of the mouths of

the Nile. This "Rosetta Stone" was covered with Egyptian writing, but below this was other writing in the



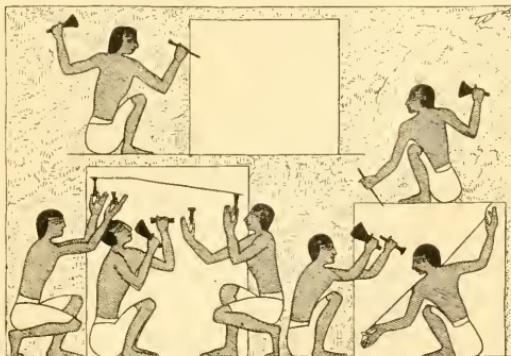
EGYPTIAN HIEROGLYPHICS

*This inscription is a dedication to the god Set,  
called by the Greeks Typhon*

Greek language which many scholars could read. While people believed the Egyptian writing and the Greek writing said the same thing, still, though many tried, none

could discover how to read the Egyptian pictures. Finally however, a great French scholar solved the puzzle, and thanks to him we can now know exactly what the old Egyptians wished to tell us of their kings and queens, of their wars and victories, of the strange gods whom they worshiped.

For over four thousand years ancient Egypt flourished under its kings. The most famous of them all was the great warrior Rameses II. During most of this long time the Egyptian people in general seem to have been happy, yet they were not free, as we are, to do as they wished. The will of the king was supreme. Moreover, the people were divided into classes, each of which had its special privileges and duties,—nobles, priests, government officers, soldiers,



From *The Dawn of Civilization* by Maspero  
EGYPTIAN STONECUTTERS FINISHING THE DRESSING OF  
LIMESTONE BLOCKS

merchants, workmen, and peasants. Of the lower classes the lot was often very hard indeed, for they must pay heavy taxes and sometimes work hard for the king without pay.



From a photograph  
AN EGYPTIAN MUMMY (RAMESSES II)

The Egyptians were a very religious people. Their priests, who were the best educated men, had great influence. The common people were most superstitious, and paid a foolish reverence to such absurd things as palm trees, cats, and crocodiles; the more intelligent had higher notions, though all believed in a

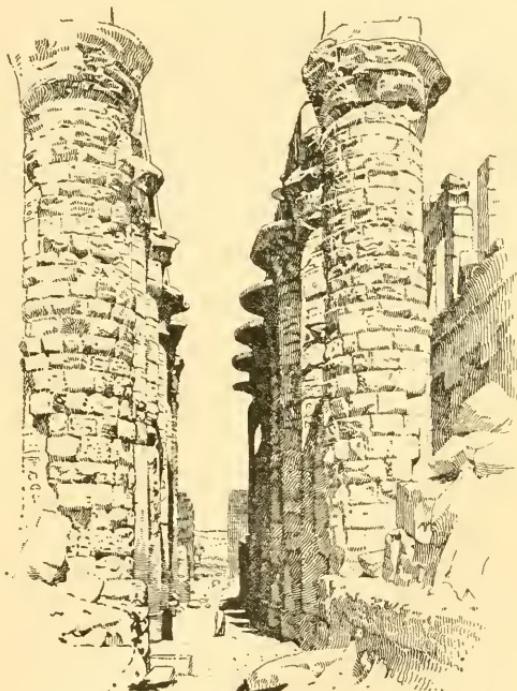
great number of gods and goddesses of whose power and works strange tales were told. Yet the Egyptians believed in a life after death, when the good were rewarded and the bad punished. They thought that the souls of the dead would one day come back to dwell again in their bodies. Therefore they took great pains to embalm the bodies of those who died so that their souls might not be without a dwelling place. With such wonderful skill did they do their work that in our own times the "mummies" of many of their great men and women have been found, wrapped in their "mummy cloth" and perfectly preserved. We can even look on the face of the fierce Rameses II, who died over three thousand years ago.

Many other important things the men of ancient Egypt knew. They studied the starry skies, and learned much about the movements of the sun, moon, and stars.

In arithmetic they could count up to millions. When the Nile overflowed their lands, they knew how, by means of geometry, to find again the boundaries of their fields. In trades and handicrafts they were skillful. Thus they could weave and cut jewels and make glass cleverly and beautifully.

But above all they excelled as builders. They built temples adorned with gigantic columns; they carved those huge and curious stone images called sphinxes which have the bodies of lions and the heads of women; they set up tall, pointed monuments called obelisks, covered with writing which tells us the deeds of kings and heroes. But most interesting of all are, of course, their mighty pyramids, built of gigantic blocks of stone, which were constructed as tombs for their kings. (3733 B.C.)

How remarkable that they could raise these huge masses and set them in place with such marvelous exactness, all without the use of



HALL OF THE GREAT TEMPLE OF KARNAK  
Notice how the gigantic columns tower above the people below. (Begin about 2700 B.C.)

modern machinery! It must have taken the labor of thousands of men for many weary years.

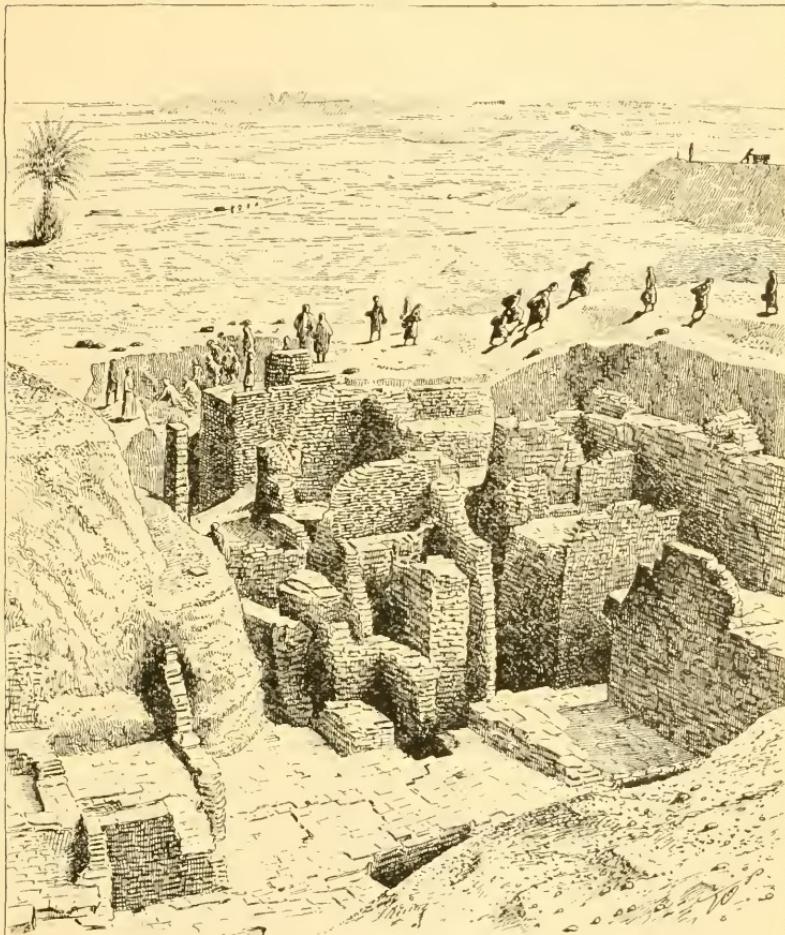
The world owes a great deal to the Egyptians, for the beginnings of much which we know go back to them.

**8. Asia, Too, Has Early Civilized Peoples.** To the east of Egypt in southwestern Asia lies another fertile land, watered by two great rivers called the Tigris and the Euphrates. We now know that civilized people lived here almost as early as in Egypt itself.

In this country the modern traveler sees no such wonderful ruins as along the Nile, but in some places huge, unsightly mounds have been discovered which were evidently the work of men. Into many of these, patient explorers have dug, and rich has been their reward. These mounds are the remains of ancient cities, and the explorer's spade has shown to us how their palaces and their walls and their streets were once built. By the Euphrates stood Babylon, with its towering walls and its terraced gardens, once the noblest city of all the world. To the north, on the Tigris, was Nineveh, whose fierce kings held sway over many nations. Other mounds in this region besides these tell us, too, of glories now dead for thousands of years.

Like the Egyptians, the Babylonians also were great builders. But as there was little stone in their land they had to make their great structures of sun-dried brick. This soft material, as centuries passed, crumbled away into the vast mounds which so well concealed their secrets.

Bricks were not merely the building material of the Babylonians; they also served them for books. Upon the clay, when it was still soft, these ancient men made, with



**EXCAVATING A MOUND IN BABYLONIA**

*A modern explorer with native workmen is excavating the entrance building to the Acropolis of Babylon*

a sharp piece of metal, wedge-shaped marks which took the place of letters. Whole libraries of these Assyrian brick or clay books have been dug from the earth, and we can now read again the laws, the poems, the prayers,

the very schoolbooks of this long-departed race. It fills us with astonishment to find how many things they knew and how much their daily lives were like our own.

### 9. How the Hebrews and Phoenicians Helped Civilization.

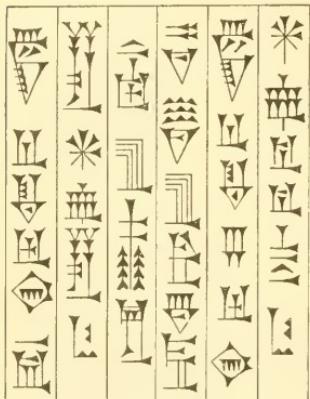
Lying between Egypt and Babylonia, near the eastern end of the Mediterranean, lies Palestine, where three thousand years ago lived one of the most remarkable nations the world has ever seen. The ancient Hebrews were not as numerous or strong in war as some of their neighbors, though

they, too, had powerful kings like the brave David and the wise Solomon. They did not equal the Egyptians in learning. But, first of all peoples in the world, the Hebrews worshiped the one God, maker of heaven and earth, and urged men to obey His commandments.

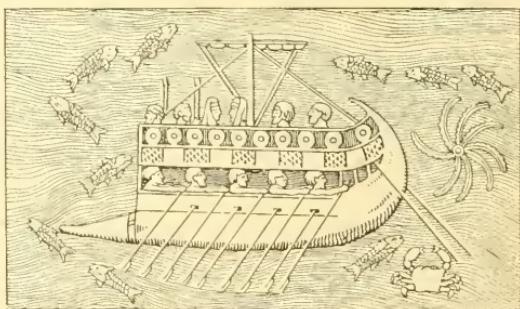
Though their capital, Jerusalem, was later seized by their enemies and they themselves scattered to the ends of the earth, the Jews still clung to the "one true God." In religion

they have been the schoolmasters of all European peoples.

Near the Hebrews, in a narrow little land on the



From an Assyrian tablet  
WRITING ON A SUN-BAKED BRICK



From an Assyrian sculpture  
PHOENICIAN GALLEY UNDER OAR AND SAIL

edge of the Mediterranean Sea itself, lived their kinsmen, the Phoenicians. They were the great traders of the ancient world, and Phoenician ships with their strong oars and white sails made voyages which then seemed long and dangerous. They dared sail even to Spain, and finally made their way to the distant British Isles.

Through trading with them the peoples who lived along the Mediterranean gained some ideas which the Phoenicians themselves had gathered from the people of Egypt or Babylon.

Most valuable of all was a knowledge of the letters of the alphabet, for the Phoenicians knew how to write by marks which stood for sounds. This is called phonetic, or sound, writing. It was simpler and better than the picture writing of the Egyptians or the wedge-shaped writing of the Babylonians. Though these, too, were partly phonetic, they were clumsy, and difficult to learn.

Phoenician	Old Greek	Roman
𐤁	Α	A
𐤂	Β	B
𐤃	Γ	C
𐤄	Δ	D
𐤅	Ϛ	E
𐤆	Ϛ	F
𐤇	Ϛ	G
𐤈	Ϛ	H
𐤉	Ϛ	I
𐤊	Ϛ	K
𐤋	Ϛ	L
𐤌	Ϛ	M
𐤍	Ϛ	N
߱	Ϛ	O
߲	Ϛ	Q
߳	Ϛ	R
ߴ	Ϛ	S
ߵ	Ϛ	T

TYPES OF EARLY ALPHABETS

## SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The earliest men who lived in Europe were rough savages. 2. These people gradually improved their condition and made many simple but useful inventions. 3. The first really civilized people were the Egyptians. 4. We are now able to read their writings and know many facts of their history. 5. The Egyptians had much useful knowledge and excelled in building huge temples, sphinxes, and pyramids. 6. In the valley of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers in Asia civilized people also lived at a very

early time. 7. They built temples and cities of brick which have crumbled into great mounds. 8. The Hebrews were the first people to worship one God. 9. Their kinsmen, the Phoenicians, were great traders, and taught the people of Europe the alphabet.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why does no one know how long men have lived in Europe? 2. How can we tell something of the way early men in Europe lived? 3. What were some of the useful inventions and discoveries made by these people? 4. What things helped the people of Egypt to become civilized? 5. What discovery helped scholars to read the Egyptian writing? 6. What are "mummies," and why did the Egyptians pay so much attention to preserving them? 7. Make a list of useful things which the Egyptians knew. 8. How do we get our knowledge about the ancient people of the valley of the Tigris and Euphrates? 9. Why did they use brick for building instead of stone? 10. Why does the world care about the ancient Hebrews? 11. Why did the voyages of the Phoenicians seem long and dangerous? 12. Why is "sound writing" better than "picture writing"?

**Suggested Readings.** McIntyre, *The Cave Boy of the Stone Age*; Holbrook, *Cave, Mound, and Lake Dwellers, and Other Primitive Peoples*; Arnold, *Stories of Ancient Peoples*; Ragozin, *A History of the World*: Vol. I, *Earliest Peoples*; Retold from "St. Nicholas": *Stories of the Ancient World*, 3-52, 69-77, 92-124.

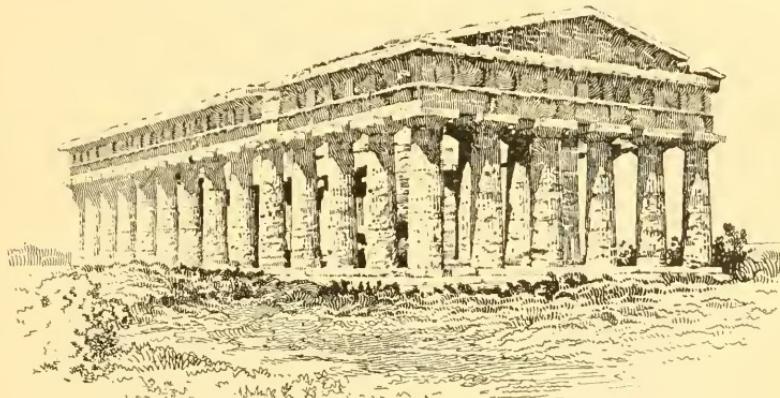
## WHAT THE GREEKS GAVE IN STORIES AND MYTHS

**10. What We Owe to the Greeks.** The first civilized people in Europe were the Greeks, or Hellenes as they called themselves. Undoubtedly they themselves learned much from Egypt and from Asia, but as the Greeks learned they also invented and improved, so that all that they did seems new and wonderful. In some ways they did so well that no nation has ever equaled them, and even the wisest men of to-day are proud to follow their example.

Of many things which we now have the men of ancient

Greece of course knew nothing. No screaming railway trains rushed across their land; no factories with their great machines were found in their cities; they did not dream of the telegraph or of electric light. As compared with ours, their lives were very simple.

But the Hellenes loved most, all that is beautiful. Their temples were small and simple, but so graceful and so perfect that we still imitate them in our public buildings. They carved statues of such beauty that artists



TEMPLE OF POSEIDON (NEPTUNE) AT PAESTUM

*This building, erected in honor of Poseidon, god of the sea, shows the beauty and harmony of ancient Greek temples*

still travel thousands of miles to see even broken pieces of them. They made stories and poems of such wonderful power that our best writers study them to learn how to improve their own work.

Yet the Greeks were not artists alone. Their wise men, or philosophers as they were called, thought deeply about many practical things, too. Sometimes, indeed, they made strange mistakes, yet they left to later peoples the beginnings of nearly all the subjects now taught in

schools and colleges. They had noble thoughts, also, about how men should live. First of all civilized peoples, they learned to govern themselves without kings and princes. To them it seemed the duty of every man to benefit his country and even to lay down his life, if necessary, to save her from slavery.

**11. Where the Greeks Lived.** Greece itself is a peninsula indented by deep gulfs and bays which make it look

on the map something like a man's hand. It is only a small country, not so large as our state of New York or Virginia, and is all cut up by rugged mountains into narrow valleys and high plateaus. Even to-day the traveler journeys across the country with difficulty.

Yet Greece is a beautiful land. Against a deep blue sky, its bold hills and mountains, often powdered with snow, stand out in clear outline, and its fertile valleys please the eye with their green vineyards and groves of silver-gray olive trees. Above all, one can never get far from the sea, that same wonderful blue sea which seemed to call the ancient Greeks to voyages of adventure and trade.

Greece has the warm, balmy climate of all Mediterranean lands. Yet it knows the frosts of winter,

which, however, is much shorter than with us.

But in ancient times "Greece" was really very much



Statue in the Louvre, Paris

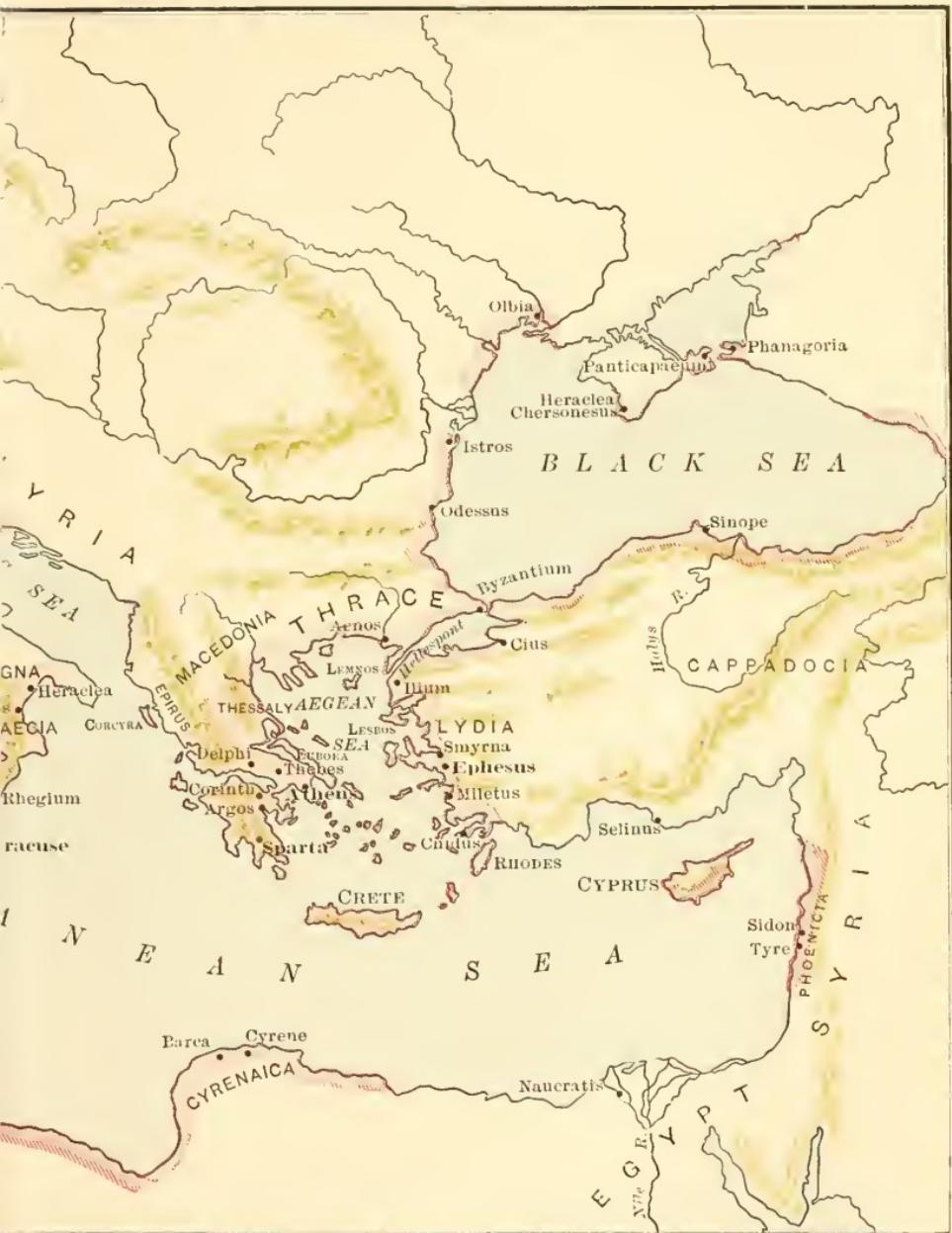
VENUS DI MILO

*Generally considered the most  
beautiful single piece of  
ancient Greek statuary*





GREATER GREECE AND THE PHOENICIAN COLONIES.



GREEK COLONIES. ■ PHOENICIAN COLONIES

Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company



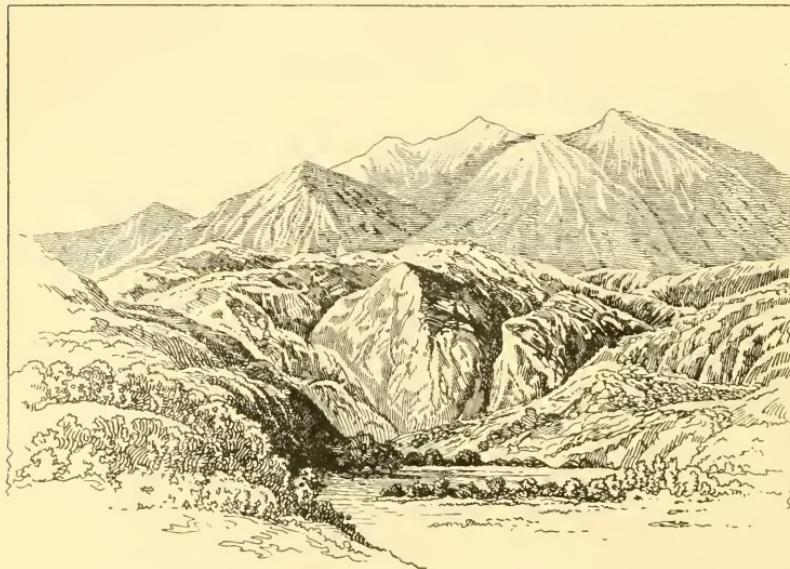
wider than the peninsula of the name. Scattered thickly in the sea on both sides of the mainland are many islands, both large and small, while to the south lies the large, mountainous island of Crete. In all of these lived Hellenes who took an active part in whatever went on, for to the Greek the sea, instead of being a barrier, was a natural road of communication.

But this was not all. As Greece was but a small land, the flourishing Greek cities very early began to send out colonies to neighboring coasts. Gathering about some strong leader, bands of citizens would sail forth in their long vessels perhaps to some neighboring island, perhaps to some distant and little known shore. Here, where some curving harbor gave advantage for commerce, they would build a new city. In course of time many of these colonies grew into powerful states, often stronger and finer than the mother-city itself.

Thus the Greeks in very ancient days made many settlements along the coast of Asia Minor. Becoming still more daring, they voyaged through the straits into the Black Sea, on the shores of which they built many towns. Because this body of water took their ships to such pleasant coasts, the Greeks called it the Euxine Sea, a name which means "the sea friendly to strangers." They settled also along the northern coast of Africa, and especially in southern Italy and on the island of Sicily. Here was built Syracuse, the greatest of all Greek cities outside of Greece itself. The large peninsula of Italy was so filled with Greek towns that men often called it "Greater Greece." Still farther west, in what is now southern France and Spain, this race of seafarers had a foothold also.

When an ancient Greek spoke of Greece he meant not merely the small mountainous land which was the mother country of his people, but rather all places everywhere where Greeks lived. The true Greece of ancient times was scattered all about the Mediterranean Sea.

Many cities founded by these ancient people still exist and are even yet among the world's great centers



MOUNT OLYMPUS, ON THE NORTHERN BORDERS OF GREECE

*According to Greek mythology, it was the home of the gods, and here Homer wrote his earliest hymns*

of commerce. Not only Athens in Greece itself, but Alexandria in Egypt, Constantinople in Turkey, and Marseilles in southern France were once Greek towns, and all but Constantinople still bear names very much like those which the Greeks gave. Few peoples, indeed, have known how to choose the places for their cities with such great foresight.

## 12. The Religion of the Greeks; Gods and Goddesses.

Like most early peoples the Greeks once thought that the great powers of nature,—the sky, the sun, the sea,—were gods whose favor men must win if they were to succeed in what they undertook. But as time went on they gave names to these forces and spoke of them as persons—gods and goddesses who felt and acted, loved and hated, much as do human beings. Upon Mount Olympus, a huge, snowy mountain in northern Greece, these mighty beings held their court.

The Greeks thought that the gods often interfered in human affairs, aiding those who pleased them but heaping ruin upon their enemies. Sometimes the gods and goddesses even appeared in human shape and mingled with men. They might be wounded, but never died, and ill indeed fared those who injured them, even unintentionally.

The chief of all the gods was Zeus, or Jupiter, whose strong hand held the thunderbolts which none might resist. With him ruled his wife, the proud queen Juno, a jealous enemy to those who opposed her. But Zeus shared his power with his two brothers,—Neptune, the rough old god of the sea, and dark Pluto, king of “Hades,” or the underworld, whither must go the souls of all the dead.



Bust in Vatican Museum, Rome

HEAD OF ZEUS

*Chief god in Greek mythology, ruler over gods and men*

The court of Olympus was graced by Venus, the beautiful goddess of love; Diana, the moon, wild goddess of the chase; and the calm and brave Athena, daughter of Zeus and goddess of wisdom. High among the gods stood Vulcan, the strong but lame blacksmith, whose workshops were the volcanoes; the graceful Apollo, god of manly beauty, and the swift Mercury, with his winged sandals, who watched over merchants and thieves. Nor must we forget Mars, the fierce god of war, delighting in the clang of weapons and the blood of the slain.

Besides these greater gods and goddesses the ancient Greeks believed also in a host of lesser beings, such as unruly giants, beautiful nymphs delighting in the dance, and clumsy satyrs who had human bodies but the hoofs and horns of goats. Every hill, every stream, every waterfall, held within it a spirit which thought and felt.

Regarding these divinities and their doings many stories or "myths" were told among the Greeks. Many of these tales are indeed so fanciful that only a very simple people could believe them. Yet the stories and the poems in which they were put are so beautiful and interesting that the world can never forget them.

Absurd as a belief in such gods may seem to us, their religion was very real to the early Greeks, who began almost every act of life with a religious ceremony. To their gods and



After the statue by Phidias  
ATHENA PARTHENOS  
Goddess of wisdom and war

goddesses they not only erected splendid temples and noble statues, but in their honor they held great festivals



FRAGMENT OF PARTHENON FRIEZE BY PHIDIAS

*Picturing Athenian youths riding in the Pan-Athenaic festival*

and made frequent sacrifices. Every city and town had its special protecting god or goddess, upon whose power it relied for safety. Each household had its gods, to whom, as well as to the souls of their ancestors, parents and children paid religious veneration.

**13. The Deeds of the Heroes.** The Greeks had myths not merely about the gods but also concerning heroes of olden times. These heroes, they thought, were men like themselves, who had lived and died, but men who possessed wonderful strength and courage and who had done marvelous deeds. In these feats the gods, who loved heroes, had often aided them.

One of their chief heroes was Hercules, the strongest of all men. Unfortunately for him the goddess Juno was his bitter enemy and by her power he was forced to perform twelve gigantic labors, each one of which would have crushed an ordinary man. The labors of Hercules included slaying a huge lion with his hands and destroying a terrible nine-headed water serpent called the Hydra. This monster was difficult to overcome, for every time the hero struck off one of its heads with his club two more heads grew in its place.

Another hero was Theseus. In his day, it was said, the people of Athens were obliged to send every year

seven youths and seven maidens to be devoured by a terrible monster living in a place called a "labyrinth." This labyrinth was so craftily built that no one who entered could ever find his way out unaided. But



From a wall painting

**HERCULES STRANGLING THE NEMEAN LION**

*The first of the "twelve labors" demanded of Hercules by Juno*

Theseus was beloved by the daughter of the king of that country, and she gave him a sword and a ball of thread which he could unwind as he went along. Thus he slew the monster, escaped from the labyrinth, and returned home to become King of Athens.

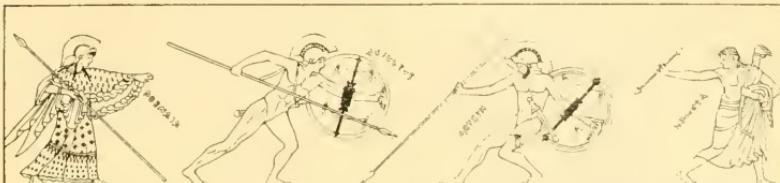
Sometimes, it was believed, a whole band of heroes undertook an adventure together. Such an expedition was that of Jason and his companions, who sailed in the stout ship *Argo* to bring home the "golden fleece." This wonderful



JASON TAKING THE GOLDEN FLEECE

*While the dragon is put to sleep by enchantment*

trophy was nailed upon a tree in a far-distant land, and there guarded by a sleepless dragon. Frightful indeed



From a vase painting

CONTEST OF ACHILLES AND HECTOR

*Serving the warriors are Athena (at the left) and Apollo (at the right)*

were the perils the brave Argonauts underwent before they at length returned in triumph.

**14. The Siege of Troy.** But the favorite story of the Hellenes was that told in a wonderful poem, composed, they said, by a blind poet named Homer. If such a man ever lived, surely he was one of the world's greatest poets, for men have never ceased admiring these beautiful verses.

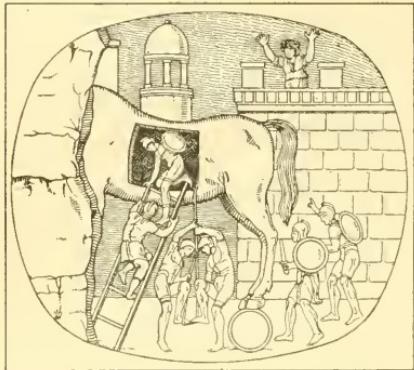
He sang how Paris, the son of Priam, King of Troy, a great city in Asia Minor, stole away the fair Helen, wife of Menelaus, king of the Greek city of Sparta. Then Menelaus called upon all the Greeks to help him win Helen back. Nobly they responded, every city in Greece sending its heroes in their long black ships to share in the war. Foremost among them were the strong Ajax, the clever Ulysses, and the swift Achilles, best warrior of Greece. The commander was Agamemnon, brother of the wronged Menelaus.

But the Trojans were great fighters. Paris, who had caused all the trouble, proved cowardly, but his brother Hector led them with great courage. For nine years the war went on beneath the walls of Troy. But though

the heroes on both sides performed wonderful deeds, neither side prevailed. The gods themselves took part

in the struggle by aiding their favorites, some helping the Greeks, others helping Hector and his Trojans.

At length Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks, quarreled with Achilles and this brave warrior, retiring to his tent, would no longer fight. Without him the Greeks were



From an ancient gem  
THE WOODEN HORSE OF THE GREEKS

defeated, and pursued by the Trojans to their ships. Even these Hector and his stout warriors tried to burn. Seeing his old comrades in such danger, Achilles' best friend, Patroclus, begged that sulky hero to lend him his armor and his followers that he might save the Greeks from destruction. This request Achilles granted, and his friend drove back the Trojans, but was soon afterwards slain by Hector.

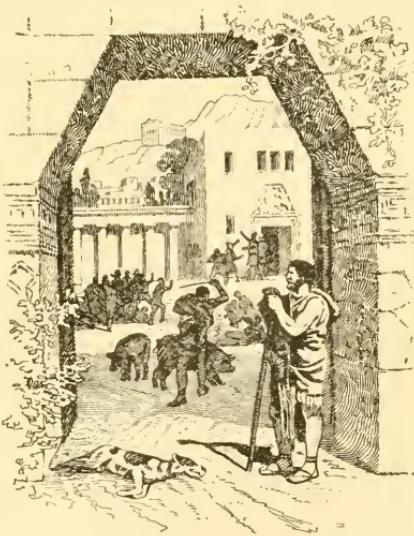
Driven by rage at the death of his dear friend, Achilles now rushed forth and, clad in new and wonderful armor made for him by the god Vulcan, carried all before him. At last he and Hector met in single combat beneath the walls of Troy, and the Trojan chief fell before his terrible spear.

With the revenge of Achilles, Homer's great poem ends. Other stories, however, told how Achilles, too, was slain and how at length Troy was taken by a clever trick of Ulysses. The Greeks pretended to sail home, but left

behind a great wooden horse which the foolish Trojans dragged inside their city. It proved to be filled with Greek warriors, who at dead of night opened the gates and let in their countrymen, who had now returned. Troy was given over to fire and sword, and Menelaus and the Greeks sailed for home in triumph, bearing Helen with them to be once more Queen of Sparta.

The Greeks never tired of reciting this thrilling story, in which they believed the deeds of their forefathers were set forth.

Almost equal pleasure did they find in another tale which Homer sang,—that of the wanderings of Ulysses. This famous chief had offended the god Neptune and therefore, when he sailed from Troy, his ship was beaten by storms and for twenty years he strove in vain to reach his home, the island of Ithaca. Awful perils beset him; his ship and his comrades were lost, but Ulysses, cunning and brave, escaped all danger. In the end he reached Ithaca to find his faithful wife Penelope still waiting his return, and to take vengeance upon those who had tried to win her hand and possess his kingdom. Among all their heroes the Greeks especially loved Ulysses because of his



ULYSSES RETURNING TO HIS HOME  
AS A BEGGAR

*Entrance to court of ancient Greek house*

cleverness, a quality which they greatly admired and strove to cultivate in themselves.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The first civilized people of Europe were the Greeks. 2. The Greeks have taught all the world to admire beautiful things. 3. They gave us also the beginnings of most of the subjects now taught in schools and colleges. 4. Greece is a small, mountainous country, every part of which is near the sea. 5. In ancient times the Greeks were brave sailors, and planted colonies on all the neighboring coasts. 6. The Greeks worshiped many gods and goddesses, about whom they told beautiful but curious stories. 7. They had also many stories regarding heroes such as Hercules, Theseus, and Jason. 8. The most famous stories are about the siege of Troy and the wanderings of Ulysses. 9. These are told in two wonderful poems said to have been composed by a blind poet named Homer.

**Study Questions.** 1. What are some of the things we know which the Greeks did not know? 2. State some things which the Greeks understood better, or cared more for, than we do. 3. Describe Greece. 4. Why do you think the ancient Greeks became sailors? 5. In what places did they plant colonies? 6. Name the chief gods and goddesses of Olympus. 7. How did the Greeks show that their belief in these deities was real? 8. Tell an incident connected with Hercules; Theseus; Jason. 9. Name some of the heroes of the Trojan War. 10. Tell the story of the revenge of Achilles. 11. How was Troy finally taken? 12. Why did the Greeks especially admire Ulysses?

**Suggested Readings.** Guerber, *The Story of the Greeks*, 11-62; Harding, *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men*; Lang, *Tales of Troy and Greece*, 9-61, 111-129, 159-188; Gale, *Achilles and Hector*, 13-143; Kingsley, *The Heroes, or, Greek Fairy Tales for My Children*, "The Argonauts," 87-253; Church, *The Story of the Iliad*, 1-16, 109-155; *The Story of the Odyssey*, 13-204, 261-307; De Garmo, *Tales of Troy for Boys and Girls*; Retold from "St. Nicholas": *Stories of Classic Myths*, 3-68; Bulfinch, *Age of Fable, or Stories of Gods and Heroes*, 1-12, 161-170, 178-188, 190-191.

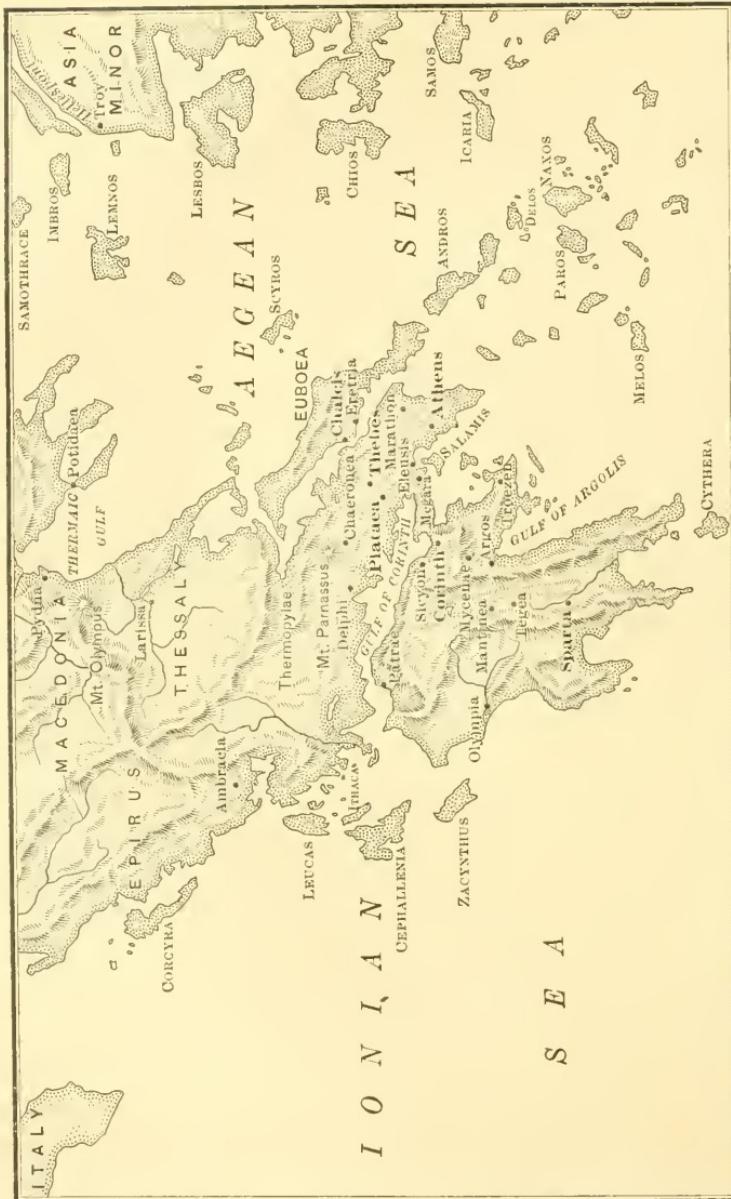
## HOW THE GREEKS TAUGHT MEN TO BE FREE

**15. How the Greeks Governed Themselves.** Though the Greeks lived in a small land and all spoke the same language, they had no single king or common government. They did, indeed, regard each other as brothers and called all who did not speak their tongue "barbarians." Yet their cities could seldom agree, and often fought against each other in savage wars.

Since the people of each little plain were shut off from their neighbors by mountains they loved to rule themselves in their own way. On some central hill, easy of defense, they built shining temples to their protecting gods, and close under these clustered the white dwellings of the townsfolk. Round about, strong walls were set up to shield them from their enemies. Those who preferred to live on their little farms in the country, however, had also a share in the common life and might take refuge behind the fortifications when invaders appeared. Such a little state the Greeks called a "city." And to the Greek his city was his fatherland. In it he usually spent all his life. He knew all his fellow citizens well, and for his city and its gods he thought he ought to lay down his life if need came. Greece had many such cities, but the most famous are Athens and Sparta.

In early times the Greek cities had kings. But later most of them got rid of their kings and became little republics. All the citizens met from time to time in public assemblies, where they chose their officers from year to year and where any one who wished could speak about public matters.

But the Greeks always had trouble to keep their



Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company

MAP OF ANCIENT GREECE

liberty. Often some rich or clever man would seize the power and compel his fellow citizens to obey him. The Greeks called such a man a "tyrant." By this word they did not mean a bad ruler, but one who had taken the government without proper authority. Some tyrants were wise and ruled well. Yet most of the Greeks did not like tyrants, and they tried hard to get rid of them.

**16. Athenians and Spartans.** The two greatest cities of Greece were not at all alike, and could seldom agree. The people of Athens loved new things; the people of Sparta loved old things. The Athenians loved what was beautiful; the Spartans only what had practical use. The Athenians excelled in music, in art, in learning; the Spartans excelled in war, and thought everything else foolish.

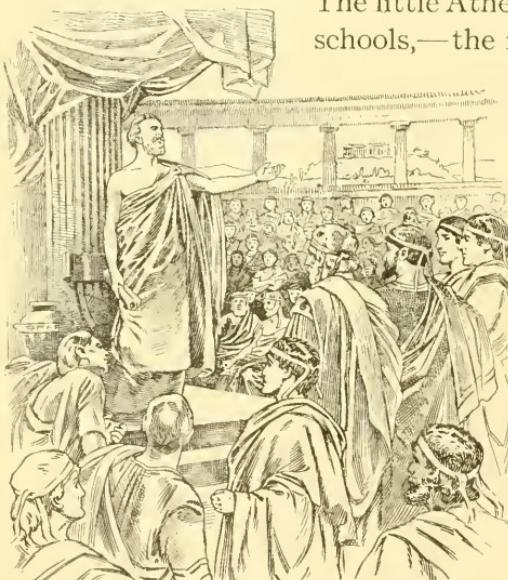
Athens always loved liberty. She was the first great republic in the world. In her assemblies all her citizens took part in making the laws. They met on a hill called the Pnyx near the center of the city and, sitting on the stone seats which rose one above the other in the form of a semicircle, listened eagerly to speeches on public questions. Any citizen could speak who wished, but before doing so he must put a wreath on his head and take his stand, facing the people, beside an altar. If he spoke well the Athenians gave him loud applause and were often persuaded to vote what he wished. Exciting indeed was the contest when great speakers took different sides of a question, and the feelings of the people were swayed by their stirring words now on this side, now on that.

Because the laws of Athens were made by the Assembly, the Athenians greatly prized the power of speaking well. Every citizen was taught to speak in public and to take his share in the business of the city. But the

best orators naturally had great influence. Carried away by their powerful appeals, the Athenians were often led to decide great questions rather suddenly. So it always meant much for Athens whether her most skillful speakers were wise statesmen or persons who tried to win applause by urging the people to do what was popular instead of what was best for the state.

The Athenian must serve his city not only in the Assembly but also, if need came, on the field of battle, so he was trained to handle spear and shield and to be a soldier. In war the Athenians were always brave and quick.

The little Athenian boy went to two schools,—the music school and the wrestling school. About daylight he set out from home under the care of a faithful old slave, and meeting other boys of the neighborhood at some appointed place, marched with them to his task. Squatting on the floor or seated on low benches, the little Athenians were soon learning from



AN ATHENIAN ORATOR OR LEADER OF THE PEOPLE  
ADDRESSING THE ASSEMBLY

the master of the music school how to read and write and to do very simple examples in arithmetic by means of a counting machine. But the master wanted most of

all to have them learn the stirring poems of Homer and of the other famous poets, to play well on musical instruments, and to sing. The Athenians always felt it made people nobler to love music. In the wrestling school the youths learned to climb, to run, to jump, to dance, and to throw the javelin.

When the boys were fifteen they went to a higher kind of school for physical training called the gymnasium. Here they were taught to be athletes and to compete in the games.

At eighteen the young Athenian was ready to become a citizen. Now came a great ceremony, when all the youth were brought to the public assembly and, before all the grown men of the city, given spear and shield. Raising their hands, they swore that they would never disgrace their arms or desert a companion in the ranks, that they would obey the laws of Athens and the religion of the city, and that when the time came they would give over Athens to their children greater than they had received it. The boys then marched away to be trained in arms and to serve as soldiers for two years. When they returned they were free to live as they pleased and to share in all the advantages and pleasures of their beautiful city. But though every citizen was thus ready to fight as a soldier, the Athenians cared for many other things besides war.

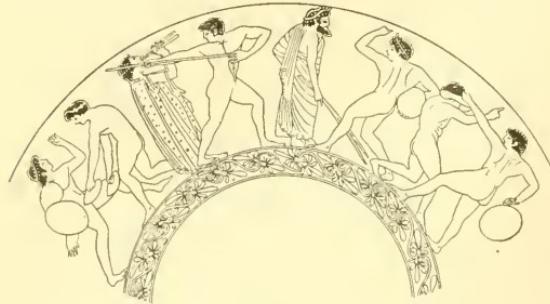


AN ATHENIAN SCHOOLBOY LEARNING  
TO PLAY ON THE LYRE

*From an Athenian painted vase now  
in the Berlin Museum*

As Athens was near the sea, many of her people became merchants and grew rich. Athenian sailors were

bold and skillful, and Athens had more ships than any other city of Greece. Her people loved objects of beauty, and spared no expense in erect-



From a vase painting  
SPARTAN BOYS AT GYMNASTIC EXERCISES

ing public buildings and statues of the gods. But most of all, Athenians loved to talk and debate with each other and to learn what was new. Eagerly did they listen to the philosophers or wise men, like Socrates and Plato, who taught new ideas about life and the world. From all Greece wise men came to Athens, where they knew they would be heard.

But the Athenians had their faults. Too often they changed their minds. Then also, though they believed in liberty for themselves, their city was filled with slaves who had to do nearly all the hard work and had few rights. In this respect, however, the Athenians were only like all the other Greeks, and indeed like all other ancient peoples.

Unlike the Athenians, the Spartans lived as if always at war. When the Spartan boy was only seven he was taken from home altogether and made to live in barracks. He was trained to run, to jump, to wrestle, but especially to carry arms and to use the spear and shield. Above all he was taught to endure fatigue, pain, and hunger,

and never to cry out if hurt. The Spartan soldier must never run from the enemy, and if he lost his shield in battle he was disgraced for life. Of learning the Spartan youth was taught little. The Spartans despised useless talk, and trained their boys to say everything as directly as possible in the fewest words.

The Spartan girls, too, were given an education much like that of the boys. They also were taught to run, to wrestle, to box, and to be strong and vigorous.

When the Spartan boy grew up he still gave all his time to warlike exercise. He must live with his messmates, and could not return home to stay until he was thirty. Even then he must not be a merchant or a workman. These pursuits were held unworthy of a Spartan.

Perhaps this warlike life of the Spartans was necessary, for they lived amid a numerous race of people whom they had conquered and made slaves. These "Helots" the Spartans treated very cruelly, so they always feared that they would rise against them.

In many other ways Sparta was just the opposite of Athens. Because the Spartans loved old things they still had kings. Queerly enough,



THE "WALLS" OF SPARTA

they always had two at the same time. Unlike Athens, Sparta had no great temples, buildings, or adornments.



*From a vase painting*

THE OLYMPIC GAMES

*A close finish in the 210-yard dash at the stadium*

She did not even have walls, "except the shields of her sons."

The Spartans were the best soldiers and athletes in Greece, but they did little to make the world wiser or

happier. Yet they gave us a wonderful example of courage and devotion to duty. When a man gladly sacrifices himself for his country we still say, "He died like a Spartan."

### 17. Things Which Brought the Greeks Together.

Though their cities often fought each other, the Greeks had many things to draw them together. They spoke the same language, and had the same gods, and the same poems and books. They also believed in and used the same "oracles." In early times, men always believed they could communicate with the gods. The Greeks thought this could be done through oracles. These were sacred places where a priest or priestess, on being asked a question, would go into a trance and give an answer which was supposed to come from a god. The most famous oracle was that of the god Apollo at Delphi, and thither the Greeks usually went when about to undertake some important work or adventure. The answer given by the Delphic priestess was often so worded that it might mean one of two things. So if the undertaking

failed when the answer had seemed favorable, the Greeks thought that they had not rightly understood Apollo.

Besides the oracles the Greeks had in common great athletic contests in honor of the gods. The Greeks always loved athletics, and eagerly indeed did the picked youth of the various cities contend for the prizes. These, however, were never money, but some simple thing like a crown of laurel, which, however, meant more to them than gold. No man who had done a mean thing could contend, and to commit a foul in the games was eternal disgrace.

The most famous contest was the great Olympic games held once every four years in honor of Zeus. During the games all wars were suspended and people journeyed from all parts of Greece to Olympia. Splendid indeed was the scene, when amid the applause of the throng in the stadium the well-trained athletes struggled for victory in sprinting, in running, in wrestling, in throwing the discus, and in the all-round contest.

Whoever won an Olympic crown was hailed as a man who had brought the highest honor to his native city. When he returned home he was received with music and shouts. Sometimes a hole was even broken through the walls that he might pass through in triumph. The statue of the victor in the Olympic games was set up in some public place, and he



THE SPEAR BEARER

A famous statue by Polyclitus, a celebrated Greek sculptor. The original is in the Naples Museum

was treated with the greatest respect all the rest of his life.

**18. Greece Attacked by the Persians.** In early times a great danger threatened Greece. The Persians, a people of western Asia, were rapidly conquering all the surrounding nations. Babylon, Palestine, Phoenicia, and even Egypt were overcome by their arms. It seemed that the Great King of Persia would soon rule the world.



THE DISCUS THROWER

In some ways the Persians were a great people, but they took away from the nations which they conquered all right to think and act for themselves.

How could the world make progress if everything were decided by the will of one king?

Finally the armies of the Great King conquered Asia Minor. In this region there were many Greek cities, for bands of Greeks often sailed forth from home and founded new cities on coasts and islands, sometimes far away from their native shores.

Naturally the Athenians sent soldiers and ships to aid the Greeks of Asia Minor when they rebelled against Persia. But this act so enraged the Persian king Darius that he determined to conquer Greece itself. He could not endure that those people of Europe should dare to defy him when the greatest nations of Asia trembled as his slaves. So set was he upon revenge that he ordered a slave to



THE WRESTLERS

stand behind his throne whenever he dined and say, lest he should forget, "Master, remember the Athenians."

The Great King sent messengers to Greece to order her people to submit and to send to him earth and water as a sign that he owned their land. How could the Greek cities, which did not even have a common government, refuse?

Many of the cities were terrified, and surrendered. But Sparta and Athens defied Darius. They even threw his messengers into a well and told them to take as much earth and water as they wanted. Then all the cities that stood firm formed a league to resist Persia. The Spartans were chosen leaders because they were the best soldiers.

**19. The Battle of Marathon (490 B.C.)** Soon the great Persian army came. Sailing across the sea from Asia

Minor, they captured all the islands and finally landed on the plain of Marathon near Athens. There were at least one hundred thousand men, and their white tents covered all the shore.

On the hills overlooking the plain were the Athenians, only about ten thousand in all. In haste they had sent to Sparta for help, but the Spartans made excuses and delayed coming. The only aid the Athenians had was from a little town called Plataea, not

far away. In days past the Athenians had protected the Plataeans, and they were grateful. When the news came



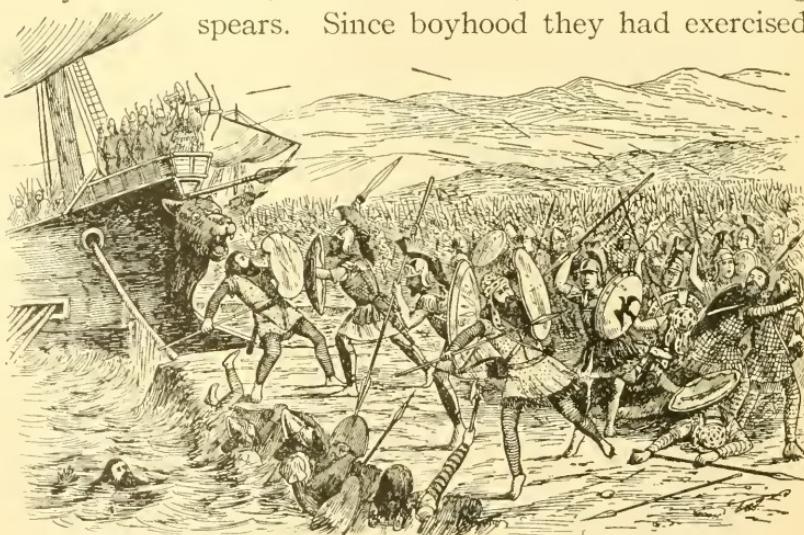
From frieze at Susa  
A PERSIAN SOLDIER



From a vase painting  
A GREEK HEAVILY ARMED SOLDIER

that Athens was in danger, every man and boy in Plataea who could carry spear and shield marched at once to join their friends. But of these brave soldiers there were only one thousand.

It seemed impossible that the Athenians should have any chance against the great Persian host. But some things not to be seen at first glance favored them. They were free men, defending their wives and little ones, while the soldiers of the Great King fought only because they were ordered to do so. It is even said that some of them had to be driven into battle with whips. The Greeks also had better weapons. They wore bronze breastplates, and helmets with horsehair crests, while their legs were protected by bronze pieces called greaves. They bore thick, round shields, and carried long spears. Since boyhood they had exercised



THE BATTLE OF MARATHON

in gymnastics, and were strong and skillful. The weapons of the Persians were much lighter, and some of

them had only armor made of wickerwork. Athens, too, had the advantage of a brave general, Miltiades, in whom all had confidence.

Though his countrymen were so few in numbers, Miltiades thought their best chance was to attack. So he drew up his warriors in a line as long as the whole front of the Persian host, but only a few ranks deep, while the masses of the Persians seemed to fill the whole plain. Yet when he gave the signal the Greeks charged boldly down the hill. On they came, with their long line of gleaming shields, each warrior shouting the war cry, and running bravely forward.

Now with a crash the men of Asia and the men of Europe met. But in spite of their numbers both wings of the Persian army were broken, and fled. For a time their center, where the best Persian troops were stationed, stood firm, but the Athenians closed in from both sides, and soon the whole great Persian army was running to its ships.

At home in Athens, as a famous story tells, the old men and the women and children waited anxiously to hear the news. How long the time seemed! But at last they saw a runner covered with dust. He had fought that day at Marathon, and then sped over the twenty-four miles to Athens to bear the news. Exhausted, he struggled into the eager crowd. "Victory!" he gasped, and fell dead.

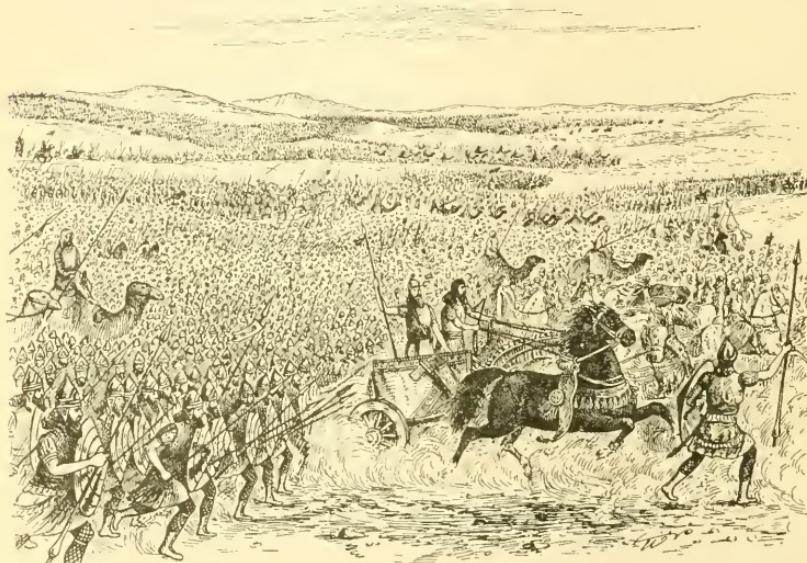


THE MARATHON RUNNER

**20. How the Spartans Held the Pass at Thermopylae.**

The Athenians were overjoyed with their success. But their leaders knew well that the Persians would come again. The wisest statesman among them, Themistocles, told them that they must be ready to fight on sea as well as on land. On his advice they built many more ships.

In spite of his rage over the defeat of his army at



THE MARCH OF XERXES' GREAT ARMY

Marathon, King Darius was so busy with other things that he could not attack Greece again. But after his death the new king, Xerxes, took up the quarrel.

From all parts of his vast empire he collected soldiers. How many men there were in his huge army we cannot tell exactly. The Greeks thought there were over five million, and stories were told of how, wherever the multitude marched, they drank up all the pools and streams

and devoured all the food, so that when they had passed the inhabitants starved to death. There were among them soldiers from forty-six nations, clad in all sorts of garments and armed with all sorts of weapons.

Xerxes assembled a great fleet, too, much larger than that of all Greece. But lest storms should hinder, he determined to lead his army by land. A great bridge of boats was therefore built across the narrow strait between Asia Minor and Europe, and over this the long procession marched while the Great King watched from a marble throne. Then they journeyed southward to assail Greece, while the fleet, sailing along the coast, kept as nearly even with them as possible. All Greece was terrified, and some of the cities sent messengers to Xerxes, begging to be spared from destruction.

But there were still brave hearts in Sparta and Athens. In northern Greece, between steep mountains and the sea, is a narrow pass called Thermopylae, the "Hot Gates," because here was a spring of warm water. Through this the Persian host must march. But in this pass were three hundred Spartans led by one of their kings, Leonidas, with a number of allies from other cities.

The Spartans seemed a mere handful of men against so many Persian soldiers, and Xerxes contemptuously ordered the Greeks to give up their arms. "Come and take them," replied Leonidas.

Only a few Persians could enter the pass at one time; again and again they tried, but were always hurled back by the brave Spartans. Even Xerxes' best troops were beaten. For two days Leonidas held the pass.

Finally a traitor Greek told the Persians of a path over the hills by which they might fall upon the Spartans

from the rear. For the Greeks to stay in the pass longer was certain death. But by a law of Sparta her warriors must never flee. Leonidas and his three hundred felt they could not desert their post. Struck by their brave example, many of the allies said they would stay, too.



LEONIDAS AND HIS MEN HOLDING THE PASS  
OF THERMOPYLAE

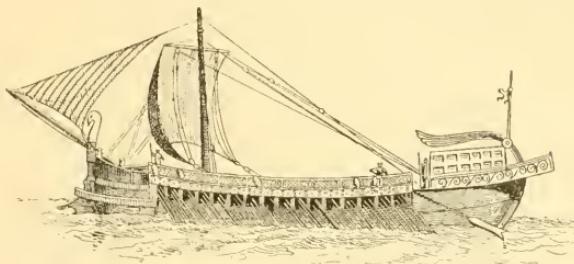
So Leonidas and his men held their ground and fought till every man perished. But heaps upon heaps of slain Persians proved how bravely they had struggled. The pass of Thermopylae was lost, but the world can never forget the example of Leonidas and his three hundred. Of such stuff were Spartans made.

In later days a monument was built to mark the place where the

heroes died. Upon it were carved no high-sounding words of praise, but a simple verse which meant a great deal more:

“Go, passer-by, to Sparta tell  
Obedient to her law we fell.”

**21. How Greece Was Saved.** The Persians now marched on and overran northern Greece. Even Athens



From a wall painting  
AN ATHENIAN WAR GALLEY

could not be defended. But her people were still unconquered. Led by the clever Themistocles, they embarked upon the ships which they had so wisely built. The women and children were taken to a place of safety, but the men again put to sea. Though the Persians captured the city and ruthlessly destroyed the buildings, they had not destroyed the real Athens. Athens was in the fleet, still eager to strike a blow for freedom.

The other Greeks now wanted to sail away to defend their own homes, but Themistocles felt it was better to fight the fleet of Xerxes at once. So, pretending to be a secret friend to the Persians, he sent a message to their king telling him that the Greeks were quarreling among themselves and that if he would send vessels to close up the entrance to the bay where their ships lay, he could easily destroy them.

Xerxes did so, and the next day he had a lofty throne set up on a hill overlooking the sea that he might watch his ships overcome the Greeks. Since he had three times as many vessels, he felt sure that he would win.

In the blue Bay of Salamis the great battle took place.

Driven by their long oars, ship dashed against ship, each striving to crash into the other with her sharp beak. The air was filled with arrows and darts, and above the din rose the fierce shouts of the warriors. Sometimes the ships came side by side, and the men swarmed over the rails to fight it out hand to hand. But the Greeks were the better sailors, and, moreover, were thinking of their wives and little ones, whom they must save from the enemy. When the battle was over the vast



From a painting by Cormon

THE TRIUMPHAL RETURN OF THE GREEKS AFTER THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS

Persian fleet had been beaten and many of its vessels sunk.

Xerxes had still a large army and many ships left. But his heart failed him. He knew now what manner of men the Greeks were. So he returned to Asia, leaving behind merely a part of his army to carry on the war. These soldiers the Greeks overcame the next year in another great land battle. Thus Greece was saved. The Persian king might still tyrannize over the people of Asia, but Europe was to be free. Had the Greeks been frightened by mere numbers, all would have been lost.

But Marathon and Salamis showed the world what a few brave men, who prefer death to slavery, can do.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. In ancient Greece each city governed itself in its own way. 2. The two greatest cities, Athens and Sparta, were rivals. 3. Athens was a republic, and her people were all trained to take part in public affairs. 4. The Athenians were famous for their love of learning and of beauty. 5. Sparta was ruled by kings, and her people were taught to love nothing but war. 6. Some things, such as the oracles and the great athletic games, drew the people of different Greek cities together. 7. Because the Persians were conquering all the nations of the world, they attacked Greece. 8. The Athenians won a glorious victory at Marathon. 9. Then the Persian king, Xerxes, collected a gigantic army to crush Greece. 10. At Thermopylae three hundred Spartans gave their lives to save their country. 11. Greece was finally saved by a victory in a great sea fight at Salamis. 12. The defeat of the Persians meant that the people of Europe were to rule themselves.

**Study Questions.** 1. Tell the way in which a Greek city was built. 2. What different kinds of government did Greek cities have? 3. Make a list of differences between Athens and Sparta. 4. Tell what the Athenians did in their Assembly. 5. If you had been an Athenian boy, what would you have studied? 6. What did the Spartan boys and girls learn? 7. Explain what oracles were. 8. What would you have seen had you been present at the Olympic games? 9. What would have happened had you won an Olympic crown? 10. Why did the Persian king think it would be easy to conquer Greece? 11. Why did the Greeks not submit to the Persians? 12. Tell the story of Marathon as if you yourself had fought on the Greek side. 13. Why was the advice which Themistocles gave the Athenians after Marathon very wise? 14. Why were many Greeks terrified at the approach of Xerxes' army? 15. Tell the story of Thermopylae. 16. Should not the Spartans have retreated when the Persians found the path over the mountains? 17. Why did not the capture of Athens by Xerxes end the war? 18. Picture to yourself the battle of Salamis,

and tell what you see. 19. Why did Xerxes give up trying to conquer Greece when he had so many men and ships left?

**Suggested Readings.** Guerber, *The Story of the Greeks*, 62-136; Hall, *Life in Ancient Greece*, 11-166; Harding, *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men*; Tappan, *The Story of the Greek People*; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Greece*; Havell, *Tales from Herodotus*.

## SOME THINGS THE CITY OF ATHENS TAUGHT THE WORLD

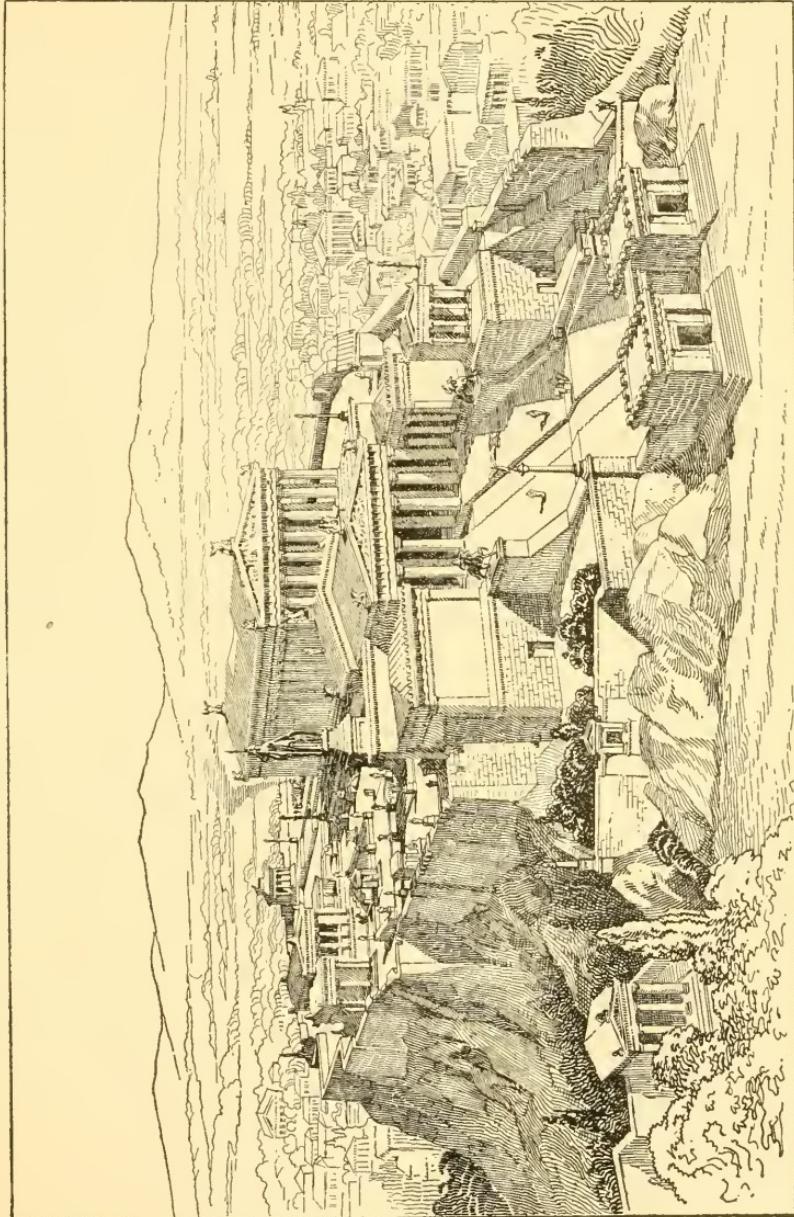
**22. The Age of Pericles Begins.** All the Greeks rejoiced in the defeat of the Persians. Nearly all had had a share in the glory, but the Athenians had won the most praise. When her citizens returned home after the battle of Salamis they found Athens in ruins. But they were now so filled with hope and courage that they eagerly set to work to repair the damage. Soon the city rose, new and more beautiful than before.

More than ever Athens became the first city in Greece, and for about fifty years flourished to a degree hitherto unknown. During a part of this time her affairs were directed by a great statesman named Pericles. His ideas were so wise, and his fellow citizens had such confidence in him, they followed his advice in nearly everything. So people have called this golden period in the life of Athens the "Age of Pericles." (461-429 B.C.)

**23. How Athens Looked in the Age of Pericles.** In the very center of the city stood a rocky hill with steep



HEAD OF PERICLES  
After original in the  
British Museum

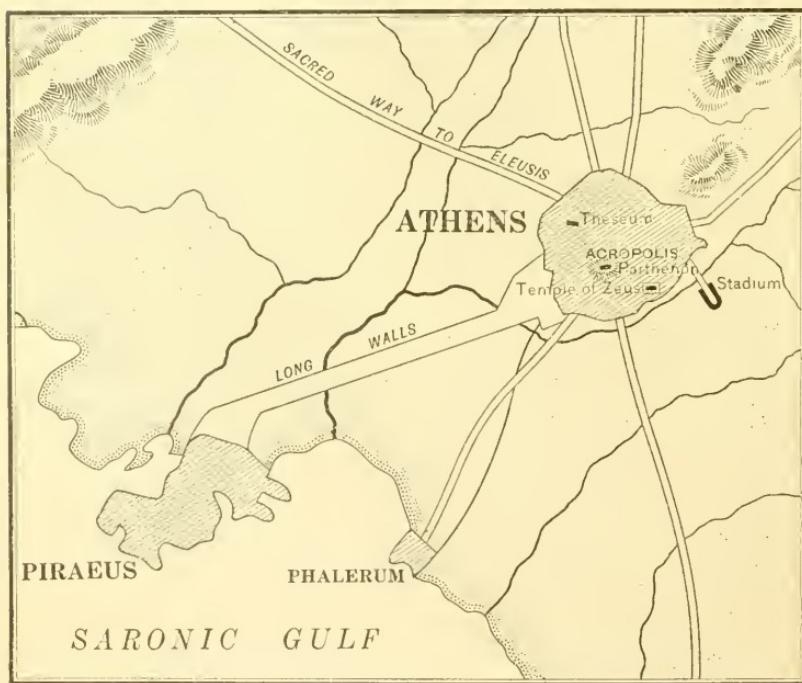


After the restoration by G. Rehlander

THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS

sides called the Acropolis. In early times this had been the central fort, or "citadel," but its use was now very different. To the Athenian it seemed the most wonderful spot in the whole world, for upon it were the temples of his gods, the bright colors of which, shining in the clear Greek sunlight, could be seen for a long distance.

A great flight of marble steps, crowned by an imposing entrance adorned with columns, led to the summit of the Acropolis. As he passed through this, the visitor to the city might well pause in astonishment, for before him stood a gigantic bronze statue of the goddess Athena, the special protector of the city. Seventy feet high it towered. Yet it was even more notable for beauty than for size,



THE CITY OF ATHENS AND ITS HARBOR OF PIRAEUS

since it was the work of the famous Athenian, Phidias, probably the greatest sculptor that ever drove chisel.



THE PARTHENON, RESTORED

*This temple, erected in honor of the goddess Athena, was the most beautiful building of the Greeks.*

Behind it, however, stood a much greater marvel. This was the temple of Athena, the far-famed Parthenon, the most celebrated building that the world has ever seen. Though not especially large, it was so perfect in its harmony and grace that it has never been equaled.

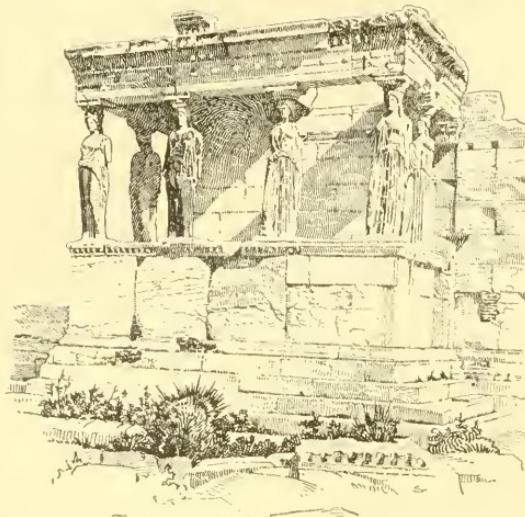
Like so many Greek buildings it was adorned by rows of simple but beautiful columns, while the spaces on its front and sides were filled by carvings designed by the matchless Phidias and executed by himself and his pupils. These carvings represented scenes from the Greek myths, and were colored so that they seemed almost alive.

Behind the columns on the temple wall ran another series of carvings representing the Athenians holding a great procession in honor of Athena, while inside the building stood a second statue of the goddess. This was made of ivory and gold, and the skill of Phidias had succeeded in making it even more imposing than the great bronze figure.

Other notable buildings also stood on the Acropolis. One of the most interesting had a splendid porch, the

roof of which was supported by columns carved to represent graceful maidens.

Under one side of the hill was erected the spacious open-air theater. Here all the people of the city often came together to see plays, for the Athenians were almost as skillful in writing and



PORCH OF THE CARYATIDES

*The graceful figures upholding the roof of the porch typify the enslavement of the women of Caryae by the Greeks after the Persian invasion*

acting these as in carving statues and erecting buildings.

Though the Acropolis was the center of Athens, many striking objects were to be seen in other parts of the city. Among them was a huge unfinished temple of Zeus and another fine building, often called a temple of Theseus, though this is not its right name. In the outskirts of the city were several places where there were beautiful groves of trees, attractive walks, and exercise grounds for athletes—parks, we might now call them. Here the youth of Athens trained for the games or practiced in the use of arms. But older men came to listen to the wise sayings of the philosophers. In such places Socrates or Plato might have been seen seated upon a bench or

walking to and fro in earnest conversation with friends and pupils.

Athens was not situated directly on the sea, but it had a good harbor five miles away. In ancient times this would have been seen filled with the white sails of the Athenian fleet. The port was connected with the city by the famous "Long Walls," so that no enemy could ever cut off Athens from supplies.

**24. Socrates, the Philosopher.** Many visitors to Athens would have been more eager to see the great men of the city than even its most splendid buildings. Among such notable citizens were Pericles the statesman, and Phidias the artist.

Especially famous were the philosophers, as the wise men were called, who in the groves and other public places used to teach such citizens as cared to listen to them. Most of the Athenians were very fond of hearing their debates.

Wisest among the philosophers was Socrates, who lived a little later than the time of Pericles. Though a man of great strength who had been a brave soldier, Socrates was a very ugly person to look at. Moreover, because he was really wise, he knew that the learning of even the greatest man is after all very little. So he put on no great airs, as some philosophers did, but mingled in a quiet way with the other Athenians, and asked questions.

But the questions Socrates asked made everybody think, and thus many became wiser and better. This great man knew that people learn far more by puzzling their brains about matters than by listening to lengthy speeches from others. Many loved him, and some of

his pupils, like Plato, also became great philosophers.

Yet there were Athenians who were annoyed by Socrates' questions. They thought they knew a great deal, and then became angry when he put questions to them in such a way as to show that they had made mistakes.

Finally his enemies accused him of not paying proper



From engraving after painting by Monsiau  
SOCRATES TALKING WITH HIS FRIENDS

respect to the gods of the city. Since he would not defend himself, he was condemned to drink a cup of poison. His friends made a plan for his escape, but the brave old man said that it was his duty as an Athenian to obey the laws even if they were unjust. Teaching his pupils in his last conversation that there is another life beyond the grave, the wisest Athenian died just as bravely as the sternest Spartan of them all.

## SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. Under the lead of Pericles Athens became the greatest city of Greece. 2. During the "Age of Pericles" Athens was adorned by wonderful buildings and statues. 3. On the Acropolis stood the famous Parthenon, a temple to the goddess Athena. 4. Other notable objects in Athens were the entrance to the Acropolis, the bronze figure of Athena, the porch of the maidens, the theater, the so-called temple of Theseus, and the "Long Walls." 5. Socrates the philosopher was one of the greatest men of Athens. 6. He taught by asking questions. 7. When unjustly condemned to death he thought it better to die than to break the laws.

**Study Questions.** 1. Who was Pericles? 2. Why has the world remembered how Athens looked in the "Age of Pericles"? 3. Make an imaginary visit to Athens, and tell what you see. 4. Where might the notable men of Athens have been seen? 5. How did Socrates show that he was really wise? 6. Why was his way of teaching a good one? 7. Why did some Athenians wish to put him to death? 8. Why did Socrates obey an unjust law?

**Suggested Readings.** Guerber, *The Story of the Greeks*, 136-152, 157-164, 173-179; Hall, *Life in Ancient Greece*, 167-253; White, *Plutarch for Boys and Girls*, 136-167; Tappan, *The Story of the Greek People*; Harding, *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men*; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Greece*; Creighton, *Heroes of European History*.

## HOW THE GREEKS FAILED

**25. The Decline of Greece.** The Greeks were brave and wise in many ways, but they had great faults also. They could seldom agree, and their cities were continually fighting with each other. They did not see until it was too late that all Greece was more important than any one city.

When Athens was so powerful, she selfishly began to bring other cities into subjection to herself, and treated

them rather harshly. Other cities, led by Sparta, became jealous. So a great war broke out between Sparta and Athens in which nearly all Greece took part. For almost thirty years it went on. Many men were slain in the battles and terrible damage was done.

Finally Athens was defeated, and though she was not destroyed she lost much of her importance. But though the Spartans could fight successfully they could not lead Greece even so well as Athens. Their rule was so stern that their allies too rebelled, and finally Sparta was defeated by another city named Thebes. Thus Greece became weak and unable to defend herself.

**26. How Philip of Macedon Gained Power.** To the north of Greece lies a region which in ancient times was called Macedon, or Macedonia. The people of this country were much like the Greeks, though more rough and barbarous. But they were good soldiers, and their kings were wise and crafty.

Their first great king was Philip, who came to the throne just when Greece was growing weak. He saw his chance and determined to bring all Greece under his power.



THE MACEDONIAN PHALANX IN BATTLE ARRAY  
With its fourteen-foot lances, the phalanx was powerful in attack. Its weaknesses were its inability to change front rapidly and its unsuitability for hand-to-hand fighting

First Philip improved his army. He armed his men with very long spears and taught them to form themselves in bodies sixteen ranks deep. When the Macedonians leveled their long spears and advanced upon the enemy with steady

teen ranks deep. When the Macedonians leveled their long spears and advanced upon the enemy with steady

step they bore down all before them, for none could break through the bristling line of spear points.

Philip encouraged the Greek cities to fight each other, and, when he saw a chance, crushed first one city and then another. Finally, when he was ready, he overthrew Athens and Thebes together in a great battle, and thus became really the master of the whole country.

Yet he did not rule very harshly, for his purpose was to win the support of the Greeks for a great plan he had formed. In olden times Greece had nearly been conquered by the Persians. Philip dreamed that with himself as leader little Greece should conquer the great Persian Empire. But such glory was not for Philip. While celebrating in great splendor the marriage of his daughter, he was treacherously stabbed by a man whom he had offended.

**27. The Youth of Alexander the Great.** When Philip was thus slain many Greeks rejoiced, for they thought Greece would again be free. But never were men more mistaken. Alexander, the son of Philip, was one of the most remarkable men the world has ever known. Though only twenty years old when his father died (336 b.c.), he



From a gold medallion struck by Alexander  
PHILIP II, FATHER OF ALEXANDER

was already able to do great things. Quickly he taught the Greek cities that they must obey him, and then he eagerly carried on the preparations which his father had begun for the invasion of Persia.



In the Munich Glyptothek  
ALEXANDER AT THE AGE OF  
TWENTY

*He was possessed of high physical courage, impulsive energy, and a lofty intellect*

when his head was turned to the sun he became docile. Among all his horses Alexander always loved Bucephalus best, and that brave steed carried him safely through many a battle.

But Alexander was fond of books, too. His father had engaged as his teacher the great philosopher, Aristotle, and the prince paid careful attention to his lessons. He liked best, however, to study about exciting deeds of ancient heroes. So much did Alexander love the poems of Homer that it is said he could recite them by heart. He believed that Achilles was his own

Alexander was remarkably quick and impetuous. Even as a boy he had shown that he feared nothing and could achieve where others failed. When no one could ride a fierce but wonderfully swift horse which had been brought to his father's court, Alexander sprang upon his back and easily tamed him. He had seen that the steed was frightened chiefly by his own shadow, and that



ALEXANDER TAMING BUCEPHALUS

ancestor, and was determined that he, too, would be a hero and conquer cities greater than Troy.

**28. How Alexander Carried Greek Ideas into Asia.** When all was ready Alexander crossed with his army into



ARISTOTLE TEACHING ALEXANDER

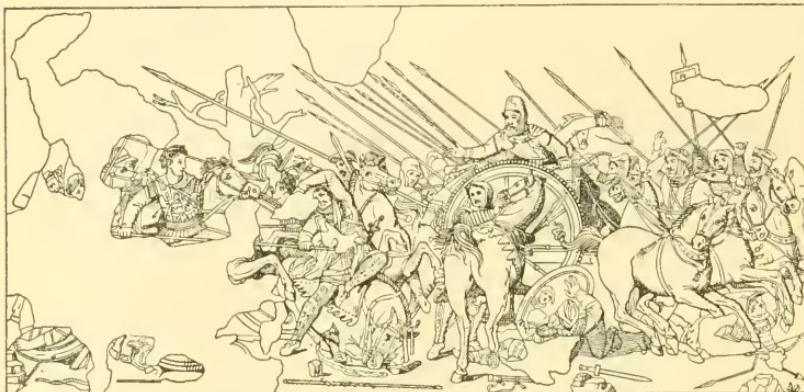
*Under Aristotle, the greatest of Greek thinkers and teachers, Alexander learned to know and love all that was best in Greek art and science*

Asia. He did not take a great number of soldiers, but those he selected were brave and well disciplined.

How impossible it seemed that he should destroy the great Persian Empire which stretched thousands of miles on every side, and had millions of inhabitants! Yet he and other wise Greeks knew that Persia was not really so strong as it appeared. Only the Persian king and a

few of his nobles had any real power. The nations which they ruled had nothing to say in their own affairs, and cared little whether they were governed by Persia or by some other nation.

Wonderful were the achievements of the young Macedonian king. The Persian armies went down like paper before the long spears of his well-drilled soldiers. Odds of ten to one made no difference. With great daring



After a mosaic from Pompeii, in Naples Museum

THE BATTLE OF ISSUS (333 B.C.)

*Leading his men in person, Alexander plunged into the thickest of the fray, while the Persian king was so timid that, as soon as he saw his troops giving way, he dismounted from his chariot and fled from the field on a swift steed*

Alexander marched into the very heart of the Persian Empire, crossing rivers, climbing mountains, and overcoming all obstacles. Finally all the great Persian cities fell into his hands, and their king, who bore the old Persian name of Darius, was slain at the battle of Issus. Alexander marched even to distant India, where likewise he was victorious. Before he was thirty years old he was master of all southwestern Asia as well as of Egypt and Greece.

But Alexander could do more than win battles. He had great plans for improving the condition of the people

whom he conquered. Wherever he went he founded new cities and introduced the Greek language and Greek learning. Greek ideas spread everywhere. Many of these cities long remained important, but of them all the greatest was Alexandria, founded at the mouth of the Nile in Egypt.

**29. The End of Alexander's Empire.** But though Alexander could conquer the world he could not conquer himself. Always high spirited, he became more and more vain, and gave way to fits of anger when any one differed with him. Flattered by the servility of the people of Asia, he began to adopt all the pomp of a Persian king and even let himself be worshiped as a god. Worst of all, he imitated the Persians in carousing and drinking deeply of wine. No wonder that his life came to an early end. When only thirty-two he was carried off by a sudden fever.

When Alexander was gone there was no one who could rule his vast empire. His generals divided his dominions among themselves, but they were not wise statesmen and soon began to fight with each other. All Asia fell into confusion. Though the descendants of some of these generals ruled parts of the empire for a long time, it could never be united again.

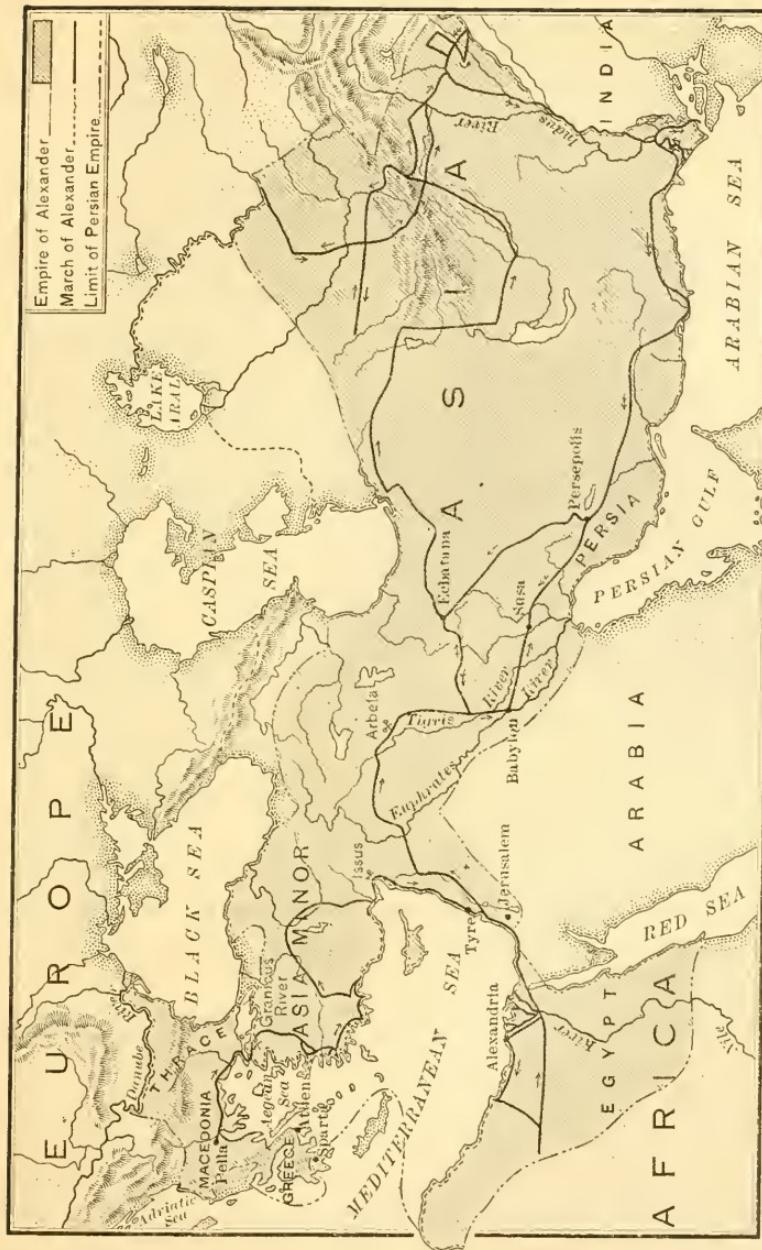
If the cities of Greece itself had been brave and strong as of old, they might now have regained their independence. But the old spirit was not there. Instead of joining to resist Macedon, they began again to contend against each other in long and useless wars. Thus they were once more helpless when a new power, far greater even than Macedon, appeared to interfere with their affairs.

But though the Greeks thus failed in the end, they had already done a wonderful work for the world. No people could see their buildings, their statues, their paintings, without trying to imitate them. No nation could read their poems, their books, their philosophy, without being moved to higher thoughts. Even when Greece was conquered she became the teacher of the ruder people who enslaved her.

**30. The Spread of Hellenistic Civilization; Wonders of Alexandria.** Since the conquests of Alexander had spread Greek ideas so widely, however, Athens no longer remained the all-important center from which Greek civilization reached other peoples. Among the cities outside of Greece famous for learning and art Alexandria in Egypt became the chief. Built as she was near the meeting place of Europe, Asia, and Africa, and favored by a splendid harbor, this new city soon became the seat of a rich commerce.

When the empire of Alexander the Great went to pieces Egypt fell to the share of one of his generals named Ptolemy. He was followed in power by a long line of rulers, all of whom have the same name. Nearly all the Ptolemies were interested in Greek learning, and under their fostering care Alexandria grew in time to rival and even surpass Athens itself in objects of interest and beauty.

At the mouth of the harbor of Alexandria was built the famous Pharos, or lighthouse, which was counted one of the seven wonders of the world. In the city itself stood a group of magnificent buildings called the "Museum." In this was kept the celebrated Alexandrine Library, which contained copies of the writings of all the



Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company

THE EMPIRE OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT  
The double arrows indicate the return of the army.

ancient authors. Though its books would look queer to us, because they were only rolls of paper made from an

Egyptian plant called papyrus, skillfully written by hand instead of being printed, it was the first large library of which history tells. The museum contained also halls for lectures, and gardens filled with curious plants. It had even a menagerie of wild beasts brought from distant lands.

Alexandria had not merely light-houses and fine



CLAUDIUS PTOLEMY

*After a wood cut in Winsor's History of America,  
facsimile of an engraving printed in 1587*

buildings but also great philosophers and other scholars who vied with those of Athens. Among them was Euclid, the great mathematician.

The scholars of this later time were especially interested in some things about which the earlier Greeks had not known a great deal. Among these were astronomy and geography. Regarding seas, rivers, and distant lands the Greeks had of course learned much from the conquests and marches of Alexander the Great. The geographers of Alexandria knew perfectly well that the

world was round. A scholar of this period even figured out what the distance around it must be, and came very near to the correct figures. Another guessed that the earth revolved about the sun.

The most celebrated geographer was Claudius Ptolemy, who lived in Alexandria in Roman times. He studied the writings of all the earlier scholars and put the things which he thought most worthy of belief into a famous book. For centuries afterward this book was regarded as the best account of the world. But Ptolemy thought that the earth was the center of all things, and that the sun, stars, and planets all revolved about it. Because it was taught by Ptolemy, this false notion that the earth is the center of the universe is usually called the "Ptolemaic system."

How much the men of later times relied on what the geographers of Alexandria taught is clearly shown by the fact that it was from them, and especially from Ptolemy, that Christopher Columbus and his friends took many of their ideas.

In many other ways also the Greek learning and art of later days after Greece had been conquered influenced the Romans and nations of more recent times. So this "Hellenistic civilization," though in some respects not equal to the best ideas that Greece had once had, acted as a sort of bridge to carry Greek learning and refinement over to later centuries and peoples.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The Greeks wasted their strength in fighting each other. 2. After a long war Athens was beaten by Sparta, and then Sparta by Thebes. 3. Philip, the crafty king of Macedonia, took advantage of the quarrels of the

Greeks and brought all Greece under his control. 4. He then planned a great expedition against Persia, but was slain before he could carry it out. 5. Philip's son, Alexander the Great, was a man of remarkable bravery and ability. 6. With a Greek army he marched into the Persian Empire. 7. After winning many battles, Alexander conquered all southwestern Asia. 8. Into this vast territory he introduced Greek ideas. 9. Alexander's work was cut off by his early death. 10. Alexander's empire soon fell to pieces, but the Greek cities could not regain their power. 11. Though Greece thus lost her independence, she gave to the world many great ideas.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why did the power of Greece decline? 2. What cities held the leadership in Greece? 3. Locate Macedonia. 4. How did Philip show that he was a crafty statesman? 5. Why was his army hard to defeat? 6. Why did he think that the Greeks, united, could conquer Persia? 7. Give an account of the youth of Alexander the Great. 8. What countries now occupy the region he marched through and conquered? 9. Why did many of the peoples of Asia not fight very hard against him? 10. What did Asia gain by being conquered by Alexander? 11. What were Alexander's chief faults? 12. What were the results of his death? 13. Why could the Greeks not regain their liberty? 14. If Greece was thus conquered by other countries, why was her history not a failure? 15. What were the chief wonders of Alexandria? 16. Tell something about the geographers of Alexandria.

**Suggested Readings.** Guerber, *The Story of the Greeks*, 152-157, 163-173, 190-201, 217-282; White, *Plutarch for Boys and Girls*, 420-444; Tappan, *The Story of the Greek People*; Harding, *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men*; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Greece*.

## THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME

**31. The Early Days of Rome.** While the Greeks were thus wasting their powers, a city was growing strong in Italy which was one day to rule over the civilized world.

Like Greece, Italy is a peninsula. On the map it looks much like a boot, with the large island of Sicily



A PHYSICAL MAP OF ITALY

lying just opposite the toe, as if it were a football being kicked off into space. But unlike Greece, Italy has only a few good harbors, and so, although the blue Mediterranean lies on one side and the narrow Adriatic Sea on the other,

her people in ancient times were not a race of sailors.

Few countries in the whole world are more beautiful than "sunny Italy." On the north rise, like a gigantic wall, the snow-capped Alps, a natural barrier against fierce nations. At their foot stretches the great plain of the river Po. This plain has always been famous for its fertility, and to-day, with mile upon mile of vineyards and fruit trees, it is one of the world's garden spots.

Down through the peninsula, like a sharp backbone, rise the steep summits of the Apennines, mountains wild and picturesque. But on either side along the coast are small yet wonderfully green plains and valleys through which, shining beneath the clear Italian sun, roll streams like the Arno and the Tiber.

In the plain of the Tiber lived in ancient days a people called Latins, and the region itself was called Latium. The Latins were only a simple country people who knew little save how to till the soil and to fight bravely when attacked by their neighbors, who were often hostile.

Among their numerous little towns one was built upon a hill beside the Tiber. Close at hand were six other low hills. At first only a country village, Rome was destined to outstrip all her neighbors and rivals and to grow into that mighty "Eternal City" which even yet stands majestically upon her "hilltops seven."

In some things the early Romans were like the Greeks. Their language, called Latin, resembled Greek in many ways. They also worshiped gods and goddesses, some of whom were very similar to those of Greece. These indeed were called by different names, but later, when the two nations came together, it was generally agreed that they were the very same deities.

In other ways, however, the Romans turned out to be of entirely different stuff. As they rose to power they proved to be a stern, practical people who excelled in war and in government. For music, poetry, and learning they cared little until Greek fashions became popular among them.



ROMULUS AND REMUS

*After being protected by the she-wolf, the children were found by a herdsman, who took them home and brought them up as his own sons*

**32. What the Roman Myths Tell.** Yet the Romans also had their stories and myths of heroes. These could not indeed equal the beautiful fancies of the Greeks, but a great many of them told of the courage in war and virtue in peace of their ancestors. These stern but inspiring tales show clearly what kind of people the early Romans were.

The Romans thought that their city had been founded by a hero named Romulus, after whom it was named. They loved to tell how he and his twin brother, Remus, were seized in infancy by their wicked uncle and set adrift in their cradle on the river Tiber. But the twins were found by a she-wolf who protected them as her own cubs. Thus they became fierce and strong beyond all men. Later, with the aid of brave comrades whom they gathered around them, they were able to punish their cruel uncle, and Romulus built upon one of the seven famous hills a village which men said was the beginning of the "Eternal City."

According to the myths, Romulus was the first king of Rome. Six others followed, but the last, Tarquin the Proud, was so haughty and cruel that the Romans drove him out and vowed they would have no more kings. Every year after that time the people came together in their assembly and elected two officers, called "consuls,"



From an old print

## HORATIUS DEFENDS THE BRIDGE

*It is recorded that the state raised a statue to Horatius and gave him, as a reward for his heroism, as much land as he could plow around in a day*

who ruled them with the advice of a body of wise and honorable men called the "senate." Thus Rome became a "republic," as we say, but in times of great danger those officers were set aside and all power given to some strong soldier, called a "dictator." He might rule for six months, but never longer, lest he should wish to become a true king like Tarquin.

The Roman myths told how the wicked Tarquin family had tried to reconquer Rome. They fled to powerful neighboring cities and persuaded their rulers to send strong armies to make the Romans take them back as kings. But against great odds the Romans bravely defended their liberty. Once it was said the invaders almost took the city by surprise. But a sturdy captain named Horatius took his stand on the narrow bridge which crossed the Tiber, and with his good sword held it against the whole army while the Romans broke it down behind him. Then he plunged into the swift stream and, though wounded, swam safely across.

Another famous story tells how once, when the Roman army had been defeated and surrounded by its enemies, all seemed lost. In despair the people turned to a brave but poor old soldier named Cincinnatus as the one man who might save the state. It was voted that he should be dictator.

When the messengers of the senate went to inform him they found him plowing on his little farm across the Tiber. At their command he left the plow and became ruler of Rome. Ordering every man who was able to bear arms to follow him, he marched forth and by a skillfully planned night attack not only freed the Roman army but overthrew and subdued the enemy. Then he returned, laid down his power, and went back to his plow as if nothing had happened.

Still a third tale is that of Coriolanus, a brave Roman general who had been exiled because he tried to oppress the poor. In anger he went over to the enemies of Rome, and at the head of one of their armies soon had the city at his mercy. Though the foremost men of Rome begged

Coriolanus to spare his own fatherland, he sternly refused. But when his mother, his wife, and his children entreated him with tears he could not withstand their prayer. Knowing that he must pay for his tenderness with his life, he led his army back to their own country.

Though these and other similar tales are of course not entirely true, they do help us to see how it was that the Romans gradually conquered their neighbors and made Rome the strongest city in Italy.

**33. The Plebeians Struggle for Their Rights.** But before Rome could conquer other nations she had to learn how to rule herself. A fierce struggle began between the rich and noble citizens, the "patricians" as they were called, and the poor "plebeians" or "plebs." The patricians thought that they alone should have all the power. The poor who could not pay their debts were often sold into slavery. At first the plebeians were not allowed to vote or to hold office.

Again and again the Forum, as the central square of the city was called, was the scene of angry disturbance by the plebs. But though the patricians sometimes pretended to give in, yet the people could not obtain their full rights.

At last the poor plebeians could stand it no longer. So one day, when they had been summoned to join the army, they all marched away to a hill, about three miles from Rome, called the "Sacred Mount." They declared that if they could not have justice they never would return, but would found there a city of their own.

The patricians could see their white tents on the hill-side and knew that they meant what they said. So they agreed that if the plebs would return they might choose

officers from among themselves, called "tribunes," who should have the power to protect them from wrong. Thinking that now at last all would be well, the plebs yielded and trudged back to Rome.

Thereafter the plebs every year chose their tribunes. If any unjust law was proposed, or any officer undertook to do anything wrong to plebeians, a tribune stepped forward and, raising his hand, said solemnly in Latin, "Veto," which means, "I forbid." Then the action had to be given up.

The right of the people to have tribunes or protectors was a great gain, but still things did not go well. One trouble was that the laws of Rome had not been put in writing, and the people seldom knew what they were. Since all the officers of the city were patricians, they always decided that the laws were in favor of their class, and no one could gainsay them.

After a long struggle it was finally agreed that ten men should be named to write down the laws. Meanwhile, the ten men were to have full power over the city, and all the regular officers, including the consuls and tribunes, were to be suspended.

After many months the laws were at last agreed upon. Engraved upon twelve tablets, they were set up in the Forum so that all men might see them. Stern and cruel old laws they were, as we should think, but it was at least a great advantage that everybody might learn them.

But when "the Ten" had written down the laws they would not give up their power. Instead, they began to rule cruelly, and one of them especially, a proud patrician named Appius Claudius, hired rough soldiers to frighten people, and acted like a tyrant. Finally, after a wicked

deed by Appius Claudius, there was a terrible riot in the Forum. The people rose in fury and with loud calls for their tribunes threw stones and mud at the cruel ruler. Then the plebeians again marched away to the Sacred Hill, vowing never to return.

Only after "the Ten" had been put to death and their tribunes given back were the people willing again to be Romans.

**34. The Gauls Take Rome.** A people who are thus quarreling among themselves can scarcely hope to be successful against outside enemies. While all this was going on, the Romans had hardly been able to hold their own in their continual wars with their neighbors. At last came a terrible disaster.

A fierce, wild people from the north, called the Gauls, suddenly attacked Rome. Outlandish in speech and dress and huge in stature, these savage warriors spread terror throughout Italy. They defeated the Roman army, destroyed the city, and massacred all who could not escape.

According to stories later told in Rome, however, the Gauls could not capture the Capitol, which was held by some brave Roman soldiers. Once they nearly succeeded.

A daring messenger had managed to climb up the steep side of the Capitoline Hill to bring news to the garrison.



SAVAGE GAULS AND THEIR WEAPONS

*To give themselves a more frightful appearance the Gauls dyed their blond hair a flaming red*

The Gauls saw his footprints and planned to take the garrison by surprise. At dead of night they stealthily made their way up the steep path, each man, by means of his weapons, helping to draw up the one following.

No one saw them. But just as they were near the top, the sacred geese which were kept in the temple of Juno cackled. A strong Roman captain, named Marcus Manlius, was awakened just in time. He rushed to the head of the path, slew a huge Gaul who was scrambling up, and hurled another down headlong upon his comrades. Other Romans sprang to his aid, and thus "the geese saved Rome."

Finally the Gauls, who, though fierce and impetuous in attack, lacked patience, grew tired of the siege. In return for a large sum of gold they agreed to go home. But it is said that when the Romans objected to the way in which the tribute was being weighed, the chief of the Gauls roughly threw his sword into the scales, exclaiming, "Woe to the conquered!" So the Romans had to pay down still more gold to counterbalance the heavy Gallic sword.

Thus the Romans got back the ruins of their city. A people less stout-hearted might have been so discouraged that they could not recover. These brave Italians, however, soon rebuilt their homes.

Yet the old quarrel between patricians and plebeians immediately broke out again. Once more there were bitter struggles and for a time almost all government came to an end. Finally, however, it was decided that all Romans should be practically equal. Henceforth there was no difference between patricians and plebeians save in name.

Thus united, Rome once more became strong, and as a result of many hard battles conquered the rest of Italy.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. Like Greece, Italy is a peninsula, but without many good harbors. 2. At first Rome was only a little village on the river Tiber in the district called Latium. 3. The early Romans resembled the Greeks in many ways, but were much more stern and practical. 4. Their myths were nearly all about war and about brave deeds, like those of Horatius and Cincinnatus. 5. The myths tell how the Romans drove out their kings and set up a republic. 6. In early Rome there were fierce quarrels between the noble patricians and the poor plebeians. 7. The plebeians finally forced the patricians to give them full rights. 8. While the quarrels were going on, the savage Gauls captured and destroyed Rome. 9. After they withdrew, Rome became stronger than ever.

**Study Questions.** 1. How does Italy resemble Greece? 2. What differences do you see between Italy and Greece? 3. Locate Latium. 4. In what ways did the early Romans resemble the Greeks? 5. What do the myths and stories of the Romans show about their character? 6. Tell the story of Romulus and Remus; of Horatius; of Cincinnatus; of Coriolanus. 7. How was Rome governed? 8. Why did the patricians and the plebeians quarrel? 9. How did the plebeians compel the patricians to grant them their rights? 10. What concessions did the patricians make? 11. Who were the Gauls? 12. How was it that they could capture Rome? 13. Tell the story of their attack on the Capitol as if you were a Gaul who took part. 14. Why were the Gauls willing to leave Rome? 15. Why was Rome stronger than ever after the departure of the Gauls?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 1-72; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 13-150; Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 7-124; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*; Haaren and Poland, *Famous Men of Rome*.

## WHAT ROME GAINED BY CONQUEST

**35. Hannibal Threatens Rome.** Rome, like Greece, had a great enemy. While she was growing strong in Italy, a rival city, Carthage, was prospering in northern Africa.

Carthage stood only a few miles from the modern city of Tunis. We sometimes think of northern Africa to-day as a land of desert and mountains, inhabited only by ferocious Moors, but in ancient times it contained many splendid cities which had been founded by the Phoenicians and the Greeks.

Of these Carthage was the chief. Her first settlers had been Phoenicians, who brought with them their love of trade and of the sea. The white sails of Carthaginian merchant ships were seen everywhere on the Mediterranean, and her numerous colonies brought her a great commerce. Carthage is said to have had a million inhabitants, and was famous for her wealth and luxury.

Between Carthage and Rome rolled the blue waves of the Mediterranean. But midway lay the valuable island of Sicily, and over this the two cities were drawn into conflict.

Was the leader of the world to be a city of Europe or of Africa? The wealth of Carthage, and her great fleet of ships, gave her an advantage over Rome. She had also very skillful generals and statesmen. But her people were not such good soldiers as the stern Romans. For her armies she had to rely largely on hired troops and the forces of subject peoples, while in those days every Roman citizen was a stout soldier, willing, if need be, to pour out his blood for his fatherland.

In the first war the Romans were successful and drove the Carthaginians out of Sicily. But the latter went only to Spain, and began to take possession of that country. Soon war broke out again.



HANNIBAL

*After original bust in National  
Museum, Naples*

The leader of the Carthaginian forces was then the great general Hannibal. This famous man was one of Rome's most bitter enemies, for when still a small boy his father had made him swear a solemn oath that he would wage unceasing war upon the Italian city, the great foe of his country. Throughout his long life Hannibal never forgot.

In Spain he gathered an army made up of all the various peoples over whom Carthage ruled. Spaniards, Gauls, and Africans filled his ranks, and there was a body of splendid African cavalry, the best horsemen in the world. But most curious of all was the long line of war elephants which he took with him, for the Carthaginians employed these huge beasts to trample down their foes.

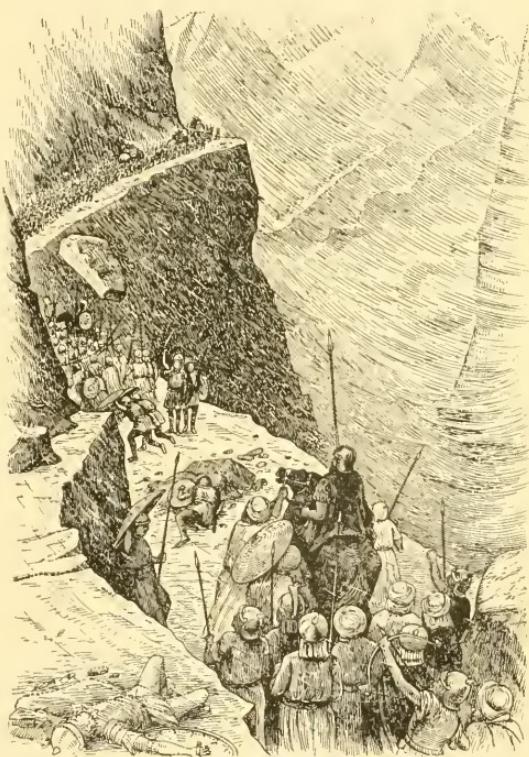
From Spain across Gaul, as France was then called, and over the mountains into Italy Hannibal's army made its way. It was a wonderful march, for there were no roads, and the country was almost a wilderness. Great rivers had to be crossed, savage tribes encountered, and finally the mighty snow-crowned Alps towered before them.

But inspired by their great leader they struggled on. As they climbed the steep mountain passes, urging along the unwieldy elephants, they were beaten by fierce

tempests and the savage mountaineers rolled great rocks down the steep slopes upon them. It seemed that they must retreat or perish. At last, however, although suffering great losses, the Carthaginians reached the summit and looked down upon Italy, with its rich fields and great cities.

Rome gathered her armies to meet them, but though her soldiers were brave, she had no general to match Hannibal. He planned so cleverly that in every encounter the Romans had little or no chance of success.

His greatest victory was at the battle of Cannae. To avenge former terrible defeats the Romans gathered an immense army of eighty-six thousand men and advanced to crush the invader. Hannibal had



HANNIBAL'S ARMY CROSSING THE ALPS  
The march from Spain to Italy across rivers and  
through unknown mountain passes,  
took five months

only fifty thousand, but he trusted to his skill. He chose for the battlefield a plain where his magnificent horsemen

could be used to advantage. Then he drew up his footmen somewhat in the form of a crescent. In the center Hannibal's line was rather thin, but on each flank he formed his best infantry in heavy masses.

The brave Romans advanced impetuously and easily drove back the center of the Carthaginian line. But suddenly they were attacked from both sides by Hannibal's veterans, and at the same time his horsemen, scattering the Roman cavalry, swooped around and fell upon their rear. Seventy thousand Romans were left dead or wounded on the field. It is said Hannibal sent to Carthage a peck of rings of the Roman nobles slain in the battle.

But to capture the city of Rome was too great a task even for Hannibal, unless he should receive reënforcements. Carthage, therefore, sent another army, under Hannibal's brother, to aid him, but the Romans fell upon it and destroyed it before it could reach him. The first news Hannibal had of the defeat was when his brother's head was hurled into his camp by a Roman soldier.

Encouraged by this success, the Romans continued the struggle and finally "carried the war into Africa" by sending a Roman army directly against Carthage. In spite of all his victories, Hannibal must now return to protect his own city. In the battle of Zama he was at last beaten, and Carthage surrendered. (202 b.c.)

Hard indeed were the terms that Rome imposed. Carthage must give up her fleet, pay a great sum of money, and give annual tribute to Rome. But even this did not satisfy the Romans. When later the prosperity of Carthage began to revive they attacked her again, and destroyed her absolutely. Even the place where Carthage had stood was sown with salt so that nothing might grow there.

It was a terrible fate for one of the most splendid cities of the world, but mighty Rome would not endure a rival.

**36. Romans Conquer All Nations.** When Carthage had been beaten, no other nation could successfully resist Rome. She soon sent her armies against Macedonia, against the Greek cities, and against the kingdoms of Asia which had grown out of the

empire of Alexander the Great. There were many wars, but the stout Roman soldiers were always victorious, and one after another all the peoples around the Mediterranean Sea fell under Roman rule.

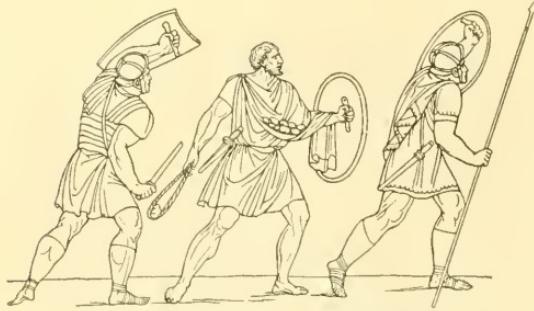
The Roman method of fighting was different from the Greek. The Romans used horsemen and light-armed soldiers with arrows and slings, but their main reliance was upon bodies of foot soldiers called "legions." Each soldier of a legion was armed with a heavy javelin or spear intended to be thrown, and a short but keen-edged sword. He had a helmet, breastplate, and shield. The legions were not drawn up in heavy masses like the Greeks, but the soldiers took their stand in separate ranks with open spaces between. Thus the men could



AFTER THE DESTRUCTION OF CARTHAGE

*Romans plowing the ground where the city had stood*

move backward and forward easily, and so well drilled were the Roman soldiers that even in the heat of battle



From Trojan's Column

TYPES OF ROMAN SOLDIERS

(1) A legionary, (2) a slinger, (3) a light-armed soldier

each man knew just what to do. Every legion carried as a standard a bronze figure of an eagle, and if the ranks were broken the soldiers rallied about this symbol. Seldom indeed could

the enemy succeed in capturing an eagle.

When the legions approached the enemy the soldiers in the first line threw their javelins and then, drawing their swords, charged. If the foe was not then broken, the other ranks charged after the first.

The Romans owed success also to their good generals. In fighting the Macedonians, with their close ranks and long spears, the Roman commanders planned matters so skillfully that the battles took place in woods or on rough ground. Thus the enemy was thrown into disorder and easily defeated.

**37. Conquest Does Not Make Rome Better.** Nations that conquer their enemies in war are not always the happiest. The Romans had been a simple country people. Each man had had his little farm. Here he raised his own crops and lived in humble contentment with his wife and children. Few were rich and none were very poor. But as they subjugated other people the Romans became proud and cruel. Many among them gained great wealth

and established huge estates or plantations where all the work was done by slaves, often captives taken in war.

There came to be thousands upon thousands of these slaves in Italy. Many of them were indeed rough barbarians, only useful to till the fields, but others were cultured Greeks, or people from Asia who knew more than their Roman masters. The field slaves had little to eat or wear, and were very harshly treated. So it is no wonder that there was always danger of a dreadful outbreak of those poor creatures. But many of the slaves lived in the



A ROMAN LEGION ON THE MARCH

*In each legion were the younger men forming the first line of battle, then the older men, and lastly the veterans. Besides these were the light-armed troops and horsemen*

houses of the rich Romans and were regarded more like the servants of our own time.

A rich Roman generally had not merely a splendid house or palace in the city, but a beautiful residence on his estate



FROM AN OLD PRINT

A ROMAN FEAST IN THE LATER DAYS OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE

called a "villa." This was adorned with fountains, statues, and paintings copied after those of the Greeks,

and provided with every luxury then known. Here the fortunate Roman and his family too often lived a life of idle pleasure, and with wine and music entertained their friends at magnificent feasts which went on far into the night.

No wonder wealthy men and women did not become stronger or better!

But while some Romans thus became rich, others grew poor. Since so much grain was raised on the great farms of the nobles, the man who had only a little farm could not get a good price for what he had to sell. Sometimes, too, his land was seized by a rich neighbor and he could not get it back. Thus many men had no occupation, and went to the city of Rome itself, where they became "loafers," ready for any mischief or violence. Soon the

city was obliged to give them food, and shiploads of grain were brought from Egypt or northern Africa for distribution. But the mob was seldom satisfied, and there was always danger that they would rise and do some dreadful thing.

Some wise Romans saw how bad all this was. Foremost among them were two brave



Ideal portraits

THE GRACCHI

Once when asked to show her jewels, Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi presented her sons, saying, "These are my jewels"

young men named Gracchus (the Gracchi). The Gracchi were not satisfied simply to complain that things were

going wrong, but tried to take some of the land from the rich and give it again to the poorer people. But as soon as such a thing was spoken of all the wealthy Romans became their bitter enemies, and bribed people to attack them.

Feeling sure that they were in the right, the Gracchi tried to carry their measures through in violent ways. As a result there were terrible riots, and both young men were slain. We remember the Gracchi with gratitude because they were brave and tried to help the poor. But though they saw what Rome should do, they did not know how it should be done. After their death matters became worse than ever.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The great enemy of Rome was Carthage, a city in northern Africa. 2. To decide which should be the leading city of the world, Rome and Carthage engaged in a series of wars. 3. The great Carthaginian general, Hannibal, invaded Italy and defeated the Romans in many battles. 4. Finally Carthage was beaten and destroyed. 5. Rome then conquered Macedonia, Greece, and all the other countries around the Mediterranean Sea. 6. Because of their victories the Romans became proud and cruel. 7. Some of them became very rich, and had thousands of slaves. 8. The rest grew poor and became idlers in the city of Rome. 9. Two brave young men called the Gracchi tried to have the land divided more equally, but failed, and lost their lives.

**Study Questions.** 1. Locate Carthage. 2. Why did Rome and Carthage quarrel? 3. What advantages did Carthage have over Rome? 4. In what ways was Rome stronger? 5. Tell the story of Hannibal's march as if you yourself had been a soldier in his army. 6. Why did Hannibal fail? 7. Why did Rome finally destroy the city of Carthage? 8. Why was it comparatively easy for Rome to conquer Greece? 9. Tell how the Roman armies fought. 10. Why did their victories

not make the Romans happy? 11. Describe how the wealthy Romans lived. 12. Why did the poor give up their farms? 13. Why do you think the poor were not content in Rome? 14. Why did the Gracchi fail in their reforms? 15. Why do people remember the Gracchi? 16. What were the results of their work?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 72-122; Kaufman, *Our Young Folks' Plutarch*, 330-343; Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 125-165; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 151-202; Lang, *The Red Book of Heroes*, 43-94; Haaren and Poland, *Famous Men of Rome*; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*.

## HOW THE ROMAN REPUBLIC BECAME THE ROMAN EMPIRE

**38. Caesar Appears.** Thus the rich and the poor were once more struggling with each other almost as in the old days of the patricians and plebeians. First one party, then the other prevailed, and blood often flowed in the streets of Rome.

Since the people of Rome themselves had changed, things could no longer go on in the old way. Unless able leaders who knew how to make wise reforms came forward, it seemed that Rome, after all her conquests, must soon be ruined.

Among the leaders at that time were Pompey, a famous general who had won many victories over distant nations in Asia, and Crassus, noted for his immense wealth. But soon a younger man, named Julius Caesar,



POMPEY THE GREAT

*After the bust in the Spada Palace, Rome*

began to be spoken of. Tall and erect, with hooked nose and piercing glance, this remarkable person began

to show how clearly he could think and with what power he could act. The people eagerly supported him because he seemed to be their friend and champion, just as the Gracchi had been.

At first Pompey, Crassus, and Caesar were friends. They made a secret agreement that they would help each other to be elected to offices and to control everything. Since there were three of them, they came to be called the "triumvirate." No one could oppose them successfully, for Pompey had fame, Crassus money, and Caesar brains.

Thus in turn they had themselves chosen as consuls, and when their year of office was up they went forth, according to the custom, as governors of wealthy provinces over which Rome ruled. Caesar chose to be governor of Gaul, the Roman name for the country we call France.

**39. Caesar Conquers Gaul and Quarrels with Pompey.** In Gaul Caesar did wonderful things. At that time this beautiful country was still almost a wilderness, inhabited by barbarous tribes always at war. The Romans as yet controlled only a little of the southern part.

From the beginning Caesar had to face unusual dangers. To get the better of their neighbors one of the Gallic tribes called to their aid the fierce Germans who lived in the wild regions beyond the Rhine. Under the lead of a chief called Ariovistus an immense number of these barbarians crossed over into Gaul and threatened



JULIUS CAESAR

*After the bust in the British Museum*

to overrun the whole country. In terror the Gauls now appealed to Caesar for protection. But such stories of the huge size and great courage of the Germans were spread abroad that even the Roman soldiers were disturbed, and many of the camp followers were ready to flee in terror to Italy.

Caesar, however, was not afraid. Calling his officers together, he made a brave speech by which he restored their courage. Then the Roman army marched against the Germans. In a terrible battle the barbarians were defeated and driven out of Gaul.

Later, in order to terrify the Germans still further, Caesar caused his engineers to build a bridge across the Rhine. The task of spanning this great stream with no building material but hastily felled logs was skillfully accomplished, and then Caesar led his army over in triumph. After showing his power, he returned safely.

Caesar had made up his mind that all of Gaul should come under the sway of Rome. One tribe after another was overthrown by his invincible legions, which won many battles against overwhelming numbers of brave but undisciplined Gauls. The whole country finally seemed to be subdued.

But when he did not expect it, the tribes rose suddenly against Caesar. Up to this time the Gauls had seldom been able to unite. Now, however, a great conspiracy was formed by a young and able chief named Vercingetorix. Though no doubt a barbarian, Vercingetorix was a patriot ready to die to save his country from slavery to Rome.

Never was Caesar in such danger. A great defeat by Vercingetorix seemed to sweep away the result of all his conquests. But the Roman commander now showed his

genius. Rallying his army, he overthrew the untrained Gallic warriors and forced their brave leader to take refuge in his stronghold of Alesia.

Here Vercingetorix thought he could hold out. But Caesar, with the aid of his skillful engineers, built fortifications entirely around Alesia. An army of Gauls which came to relieve the fortress was beaten, and after a long siege Vercingetorix and his warriors had to surrender.

The unfortunate chief was taken to Rome, paraded through the streets, and finally executed. Yet to this day his memory is honored by the French people as that of a brave man who tried to save his country.

Besides subduing Gaul, Caesar undertook other enterprises. During the conflicts the Gallic tribes received aid from the people of a distant country which the Romans called Britannia. It was England, then an almost unknown land inhabited by a race called Britons.

The Britons were kinsfolk of the Gauls. But they were more barbarous. Great influence was held among them by their priests, called Druids. Groves of oak trees were their chosen retreats, and they paid special veneration to the plant called mistletoe. The Druids carried on the rites of a dark and gloomy religion whose gods they tried to appease by human sacrifice.

Caesar determined to teach the Britons that even the sea could not save them from the power of Rome. When the ships of Caesar came within sight of the white cliffs of Britannia, he found the Britons drawn up to defend their land. They had spears and darts, and the skins of many of them were tattooed a blue color. Some of the chiefs rode in war chariots having sharp blades attached to the wheels so that they could cut down their foes.

At first the Romans could not land because of the shower of darts and stones rained upon them. But

finally a brave soldier who carried one of the standards, calling out to the men to follow or they would lose their eagle, jumped into the shallow water and waded forward. Then all rushed after him, and though



From an old print after painting by Blaky

CAESAR AND HIS MEN LANDING IN BRITAIN

the Britons resisted stoutly, they were at last defeated.

Caesar made two expeditions to Britannia, but since it was so far away he did not try to hold it permanently. All Gaul, however, was brought by him under the rule of Rome. By his marches and battles he showed himself one of the greatest generals Rome had ever produced. But meanwhile things were changing at home. Crassus was now dead, and Pompey had become Caesar's rival and enemy. He and many of the noble and wealthy Romans feared lest, now that Caesar had conquered Gaul, he would make himself absolute master of Rome also. Among the mob, however, many favored Caesar. He had skillfully won them to his side by giving them bribes and having them entertained by games. Little did such men care whether Rome was ruled in the old way by its senate or by Caesar alone.

**40. Caesar Makes Himself Master of Rome.** Caesar's enemies prepared to punish him, but Caesar was too quick. At the head of his faithful soldiers he marched into Italy and reached a little stream called the Rubicon. Here for a moment he hesitated. To cross the Rubicon meant to declare a war which would mean for him either mighty power or death. Should he take the risk?

"The die is cast," he said, and led his soldiers across.

So quickly did he come that Pompey and his followers could not get ready to withstand him. They fled to Greece, and Caesar became master of Rome.

But his power was not yet sure. All who loved the old customs of Rome were his foes. Many went to join Pompey, and that famous soldier soon had a great army, far larger than Caesar could muster. But Caesar did not fear, for he trusted to his own skill and to the valor of his veteran soldiers. He soon crossed to Greece and met Pompey in a great battle. Pompey at first had the advantage, but in the end Caesar was completely victorious. The army of his enemies was scattered and Pompey, fleeing for safety, was slain.

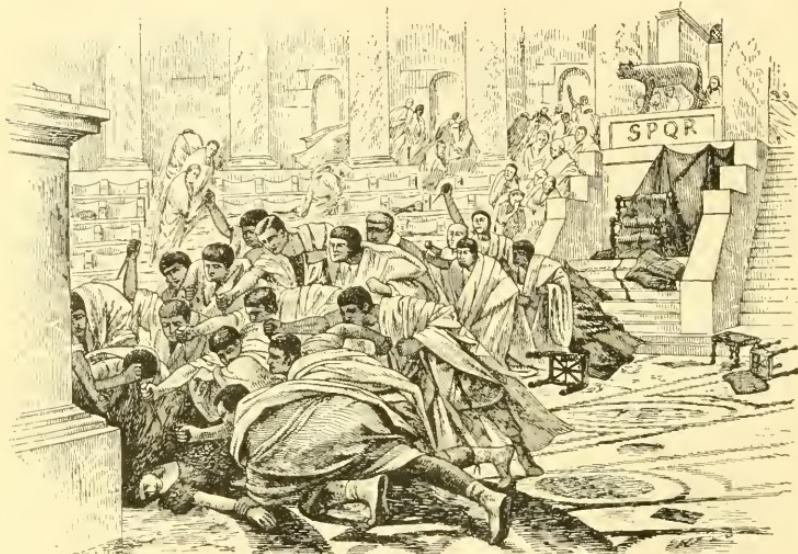
Even yet Caesar was not safe, for his enemies gathered other armies to overthrow him. More battles were fought, but the great leader was always victorious. Once he won so quickly that he sent to Rome merely the words, "I came, I saw, I conquered."

One man, Julius Caesar, was now master of the whole civilized world.

**41. The Death of Caesar.** How would Caesar use the power he had thus gained? In many ways he proved a wise ruler, and though he crushed his foes he had good plans to improve conditions. But the man who

overthrows the liberty of his country always has enemies.

Among the prominent men of Rome a plot was formed to slay Caesar. Some who took part in it were merely jealous or angry at some slight, but others, like Brutus, believed that Caesar was a tyrant and that his death would make Rome free as it had been in the good old days after the Tarquins were driven out. The conspirators



From a painting by G. Rochegrosse

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

*On the 10th of March, 44 B.C. perished the greatest of the Romans*

planned to stab Caesar at a great meeting soon to be held by the senate. It is said that the victim was warned, but that he would not give heed.

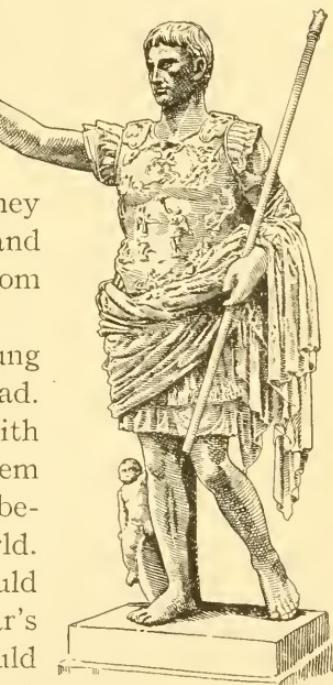
At last the day came. In all its state the senate was assembled, and Caesar entered the hall. Now the conspirators, as if by chance, came around him. One of them handed him a paper, and as he did so suddenly grasped Caesar by the robe. Then the plotters drew

from beneath their cloaks long, gleaming daggers, and stabbed Caesar again and again. Thus wretchedly died this great conqueror.

But Rome was not free. The death of Caesar meant merely that somebody else would take his place. The Roman people had forgotten how to govern themselves.

**42. Caesar Augustus Rules.** Brutus and the other conspirators expected that the people would applaud what they had done. But the Romans did not do so. When Caesar was buried, his friend Mark Antony made a powerful speech, telling what a great man Caesar was and how much he had done for the people. As they listened to his words the mob became so angry that they threatened the lives of Brutus and his supporters, and drove them from the city.

Mark Antony and the young nephew of Caesar then took the lead. They followed the conspirators with an army, defeated and slew them in a battle in Greece, and thus became rulers of the Roman world. It was agreed that Antony should rule all the eastern part and Caesar's nephew, the western. They could not live long in peace, however, but soon fought each other, just as Caesar and Pompey had done before. Antony lost his life, and then young Caesar was supreme.



CAESAR AUGUSTUS

After a statue in the Vatican, Rome

Caesar Augustus, as he was called, was a tall, fine looking man who seemed born to be a ruler. He proved both wise and clever. Instead of taking all the state of a king, Augustus allowed the Romans to have their assemblies and play at electing consuls just as in the old days, but he himself took the title of emperor and really had all the power. From this time on Rome always had an emperor at its head. The Roman Republic became the Roman Empire. (31 B.C.)

The Roman Empire started well. Augustus was firm but wise. Though he had risen by violence he did not like war, and kept the empire peaceful. He thought it best to beautify and improve Rome by new squares and buildings, and to encourage great writers and artists. So at the end of his reign he justly boasted that "he found Rome a city of brick and left it a city of marble."

Well indeed would it have been if all the emperors or "Caesars" who came after had followed his example. But some loved bloodshed; others cared only to eat and drink and live in luxury. So people often looked back to the "Age of Augustus" as the happiest and greatest time Rome ever had.

**43. What the Roman Empire Was.** All the civilized world had been conquered by Rome and for four hundred years was ruled by Roman emperors. From the distant Tigris and Euphrates rivers in Asia to the surging waves of the Atlantic Ocean in the west; from the dark forests of Germany on the north to the sands of the Sahara in Africa were seen Roman officials in their white "togas," or robes of state, and stern-faced Roman soldiers with sword and shield. Each country was now but a Roman province, ruled by a governor sent from Rome. The





## THE ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT



Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Co.

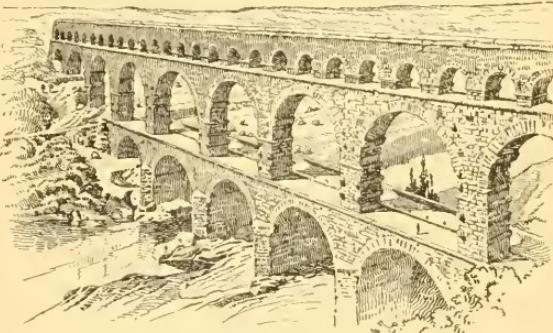
WITH THE PRINCIPAL ROMAN ROADS



cultured Greek, the tattooed Briton, the dark-skinned Moor, and the savage Gaul must all alike bow to the will of Caesar, and even worship his image.

Yet it was a good thing for them to be conquered by Rome. They could now no longer fight and plunder each other, but must live in peace and apply themselves to industry. Everywhere throughout the empire might be seen splendid cities, with fine buildings, beautiful public squares, and noble theaters. Huge stone aqueducts often brought to such towns a supply of clear water from a distance of many miles. Between the cities lay smiling fields and green vineyards, cultivated in peaceful security, while through the country stretched those wonderful white roads for which the Romans were famous. All of these led finally to Rome itself, the capital of the world.

As time went on, the people of many provinces of the empire became like the Romans. They learned to speak the Latin language; they dressed in Roman costume; they sent their children to Roman schools. Thus, after a while, if a person had traveled in Spain, in Gaul, or even in northern Africa he would have seen little that was different from Italy itself.



ROMAN BRIDGE AND AQUEDUCT NEAR NIMES, FRANCE  
This structure, known as the *Pont du Gard* bridge, is 880 feet long and 100 feet high. One can still walk through the water channel, which is at the very top

Not everything in the empire was good by any means. Thousands of poor slaves still groaned at hard labor that

a few wealthy Romans might enjoy every luxury in their villas. Harsh Roman governors sometimes played the tyrant over the people in distant provinces, and plundered them of their goods. Heavy taxes had to be paid that some Caesar might have his great court, and the mob at Rome be fed and amused.

Yet, all things considered, the world as a whole was a much better place to live in during the days when the Roman Empire was strong than it had ever been before. At least, there was peace and security.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The Roman people could no longer manage their affairs in the old ways. 2. The greatest leaders of that time were Pompey, Crassus, and Julius Caesar. 3. Caesar was the ablest, and won the favor of the people. 4. Sent to govern Gaul, Caesar conquered all that country and visited Britain. 5. Pompey and other wealthy Romans feared Caesar, and tried to punish him. 6. Caesar declared war upon them, crushed Pompey, and made himself master of Rome. 7. Before he could improve matters he was stabbed by Brutus and other men who had plotted against him. 8. After further struggles, Caesar's nephew, called Caesar Augustus, became master. 9. He was a wise and peaceful ruler. 10. From this time on Rome was always ruled by an emperor. 11. The world now had peace, and in many ways was better off than ever before.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why did Rome need leaders wiser than the Gracchi? 2. Who were the chief men of this period and what did each have which made him a leader? 3. What was the purpose of the first "triumvirate"? 4. What difficulties did Caesar meet in Gaul? 5. Why was he so successful? 6. Tell the story of Caesar's expedition to Britain. 7. Why did Pompey now fear Caesar? 8. What people in Rome favored Caesar? 9. Why did Caesar invade Italy so quickly? 10. Why did many good men take the side of Pompey? 11. What was the result of Caesar's victories over Pompey and his supporters? 12. Why did Brutus wish to slay

Caesar, when he was planning to improve matters? 13. Tell the story of Caesar's death as if you had been a spectator in the Senate House. 14. What were the results of Caesar's death? 15. How did Augustus become ruler of Rome? 16. Prove that Augustus was a wise ruler. 17. How was the government of Rome changed after his time? 18. What were some of the things you would have seen had you traveled through the Roman Empire? 19. How were many of the people who lived in the empire changed? 20. What were some of the bad things in the empire?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 123-181; Kaufman, *Our Young Folks' Plutarch*, 406-418; Gould, *The Children's Plutarch*, 107-134; Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 184-211; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 229-284; Clarke, *The Story of Caesar*; Haaren and Poland, *Famous Men of Rome*; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*.

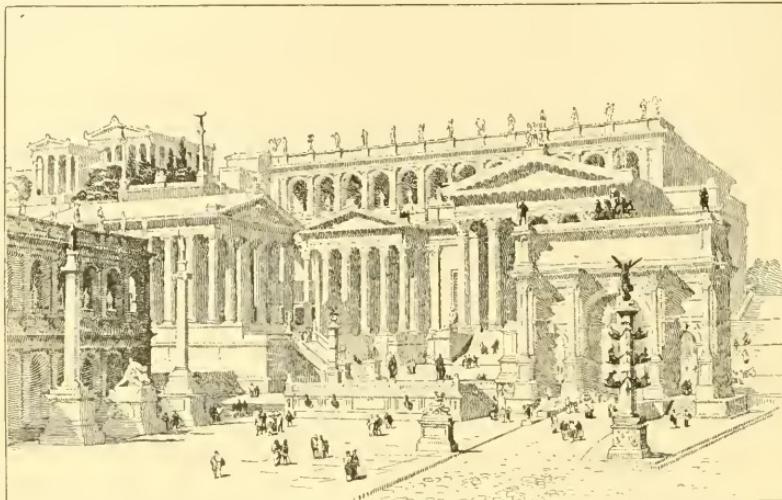
## HOW THE ROMANS LIVED

**44. How the City of Rome Looked.** Majestic indeed was the great city which had conquered the world. In the center, thronged with people coming and going, was the famous Forum or public square which had witnessed so many stirring scenes, from the exile of Tarquin to the funeral of Caesar. It was surrounded by magnificent temples and public buildings upon which had been lavished untold sums.

Round about rose the celebrated seven hills, set thick with dwellings and palaces. Of these the best known is the Capitoline, where stood the temple of Jupiter and the citadel which had once defied the attack of the Gauls.

In their temples and other public buildings the Romans had very largely copied the Greeks. But the simple and graceful temples of Greece were not gorgeous enough for them, and they added such features as colored marbles and columns richly carved with leaves and flowers.

The Romans, however, had some original ideas. They understood how to build arched roofs and door-



THE ROMAN FORUM IN THE EARLY EMPIRE

*After the restoration by Professor E. Becchetti, Royal Academy of Fine Arts, Rome*

ways, and also how to put lofty domes on many of their temples. They learned, too, how to construct large buildings of brick and concrete instead of those entirely of stone.

Of most of the notable buildings which once adorned Rome the visitor now sees only broken remains. About the ruined Forum we can see their crumbling arches and perhaps trace their foundations. Yet to this day one temple built in the time of the Roman Empire still stands to show us how a Roman structure actually looked. With its lofty dome and ornamental porch the famous Pantheon carries the traveler back to the days when Caesar's word was law and his legions unconquerable.

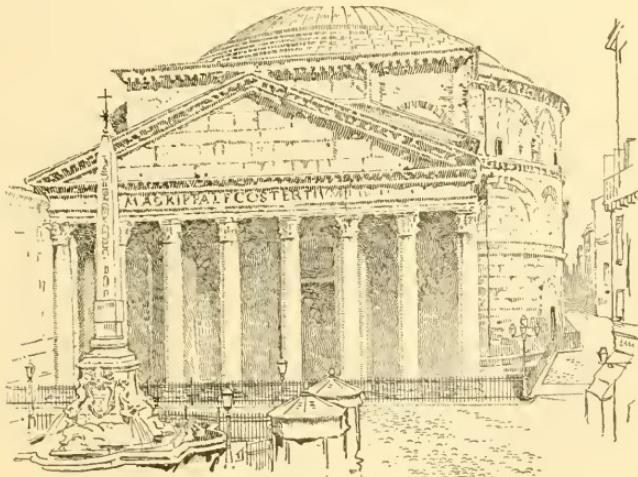
As the city grew, other public squares or "fora," splendidly adorned, were constructed as centers of life

in different parts of Rome. But none ever equaled the original Forum in importance.

The busy streets of the world's capital were often beautified and shaded by "porticoes," or rows of columns covered by a roof but open to the air. Beneath the warm sun of Italy these structures gave welcome protection.

Here thronged the vast population. The dignified senator clad in his toga and with sandals on his feet, the half-naked slave, the workman with his tools, the soldier with sword and helmet—Romans, swarthy Africans, rude Britons, cultured Greeks—might have been seen passing in rapid succession, for everybody who could came to Rome on pleasure or business.

The senator, thinking over a speech he is to deliver, no doubt is on his way to the Senate House. Others



THE PANTHEON AT ROME

*The "Pantheon," a temple dedicated to all the gods was the most famous building of the "Age of Augustus."*

may be going to one of the great "basilicas," or buildings where courts of justice are held. Many, too, are on

their way to the public baths, for bathing was to the Romans one of the chief delights.

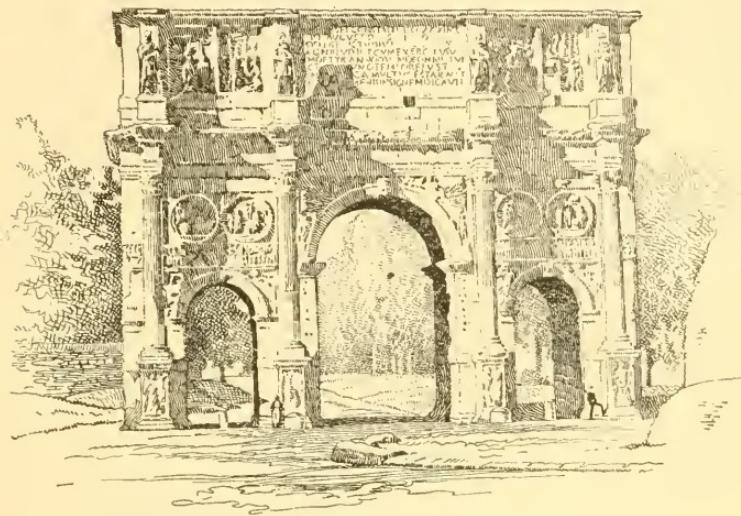
The buildings which contained the baths were indeed among the most notable structures in Rome. Erected at great expense by Caesars anxious to gain the favor of the people, they contained not alone every possible arrangement for bathing, but lounging rooms, places for exercise and games, libraries, gardens, and many other



A ROMAN EMPEROR CELEBRATING A TRIUMPH

attractions. Many Romans seem to have spent most of their time there.

**45. What a Roman Triumph Meant.** But most splendid did the great city seem when a triumph was



THE TRIUMPHAL ARCH OF CONSTANTINE, ROME

to be celebrated by Caesar or by some great general. Such a triumph was held after a victory over the enemies of Rome, when the successful commander and his army returned home.

Up the Via Sacra, or Sacred Way, which led to the Capitoline Hill, came the splendid procession, with music and shouting,—first the magistrates of Rome and the senate; then the long line of cars and wagons piled high with the spoils taken in the war; next, loaded with chains, the captives, often the kings or princes of distant peoples. Now, riding in his chariot, came the victorious leader himself, clad in splendid apparel and crowned with a garland. Finally tramped in stern array the Roman soldiers, each legion bearing the eagles around which it had toiled and fought so well.

Along the route the populace greeted them with shouts of joy and praise, and sometimes threw flowers before their feet. No wonder that a triumph was one of the greatest honors which a Roman could attain.

Sometimes, for still greater glory, a victorious emperor would set up in some public place a mighty column bearing aloft his statue; or cause a lofty triumphal arch to be constructed. Several of these still stand in Rome, commemorating the victories of seventeen or eighteen centuries ago. Even yet we admire their grace, and sometimes copy them in our own great cities.

**46. Amusements of the Romans.** Like the people of most great cities, the Romans became more and more fond of amusement. Imitating the Greeks, they thronged the theater and took pleasure in horse and



From a print after the painting by Ulpiano Checa  
A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

chariot races held at great race courses called "circuses."

But such amusement grew too tame. Under the

empire the awful custom of holding public combats in which armed men called gladiators fought with each



THE COLISEUM AT ROME

*Elliptical in form, this vast structure, one of the greatest in the world, seating 87,000 spectators, rose to a height of 157 feet*

other or with wild beasts became more and more popular. These gladiatorial shows were held in huge, open, circular structures of stone or concrete called amphitheaters. Of these the most famous is the gigantic Coliseum at Rome, but almost every important town in the empire could boast a similar though smaller building.

Not merely the ignorant people crowded the stone seats, but even nobles and senators, and the Caesars themselves, clad in festal garments, were present and shouted their applause while the wretched gladiators fought and died before their eyes.

These poor men were usually prisoners captured in war or else slaves carefully trained for the purpose. Generally they fought in pairs, but on great occasions small armies of them sometimes contended and the arenas, as the spaces in the center of the amphitheaters were called, ran with their blood. Savage beasts, such

as lions, tigers, and bears, were also brought at huge expense from distant lands to add to the bloody spectacle.



GLADIATORS FIGHTING

*When training, the gladiators always fought with wooden swords. The word "gladiator" means swordsman*

Wealthy men seeking to be popular sometimes spent large sums in giving the people such entertainments. Later the emperors furnished them regularly so that the people might praise their generosity and be kept by such amusements from rebelling against their rule. Perhaps the vilest thing of all occurred when several of the worst

emperors tried to win the applause of the Roman mob by taking part in the games themselves, using care, however, that they should be protected against all chance of injury. One wicked emperor fought with gladiators who had as weapons only swords made of lead or tin.

Such wicked and brutal amusements did much to make the Romans cruel and cowardly. This was one of several reasons why, under the Caesars, they were no longer the brave and honorable men who had expelled the Tarquins and forced victory from Carthage.

**47. The Destruction of Pompeii.** The rich Romans loved to have their villas and summer homes in attractive places. No wonder that many chose the shores of the beautiful Bay of Naples with its blue waves, vine-clad hills, and background of mountains. Here, too, were flourishing towns, one of which was called Pompeii. It

is true that slight earthquakes were not unknown in that region, and that Mt. Vesuvius which stood near had once been a volcano, but of those things men thought little.

But one summer afternoon in the year 79 A.D. a strange thing happened. Over the mountain was seen a huge cloud, now bright, now black and misty in appearance. As it stretched out from the mountain top it looked to some like a huge pine tree. At first people wondered what this strange thing was; soon they were filled with terror. Ashes and stones began to fall; loud rumbling noises were heard; the earth shook, and seemed to rise up and push back the sea. It grew dark, and the air was filled with stifling odors.

In their panic all who could fled, some even putting pillows or cushions on their heads. But in the darkness many lost their way, and all were calling out to each other in horror and despair. It seemed that the whole world was about to be destroyed.

In truth, it was Mt. Vesuvius which had suddenly burst forth in so terrible an eruption that the entire top of the mountain was blown off by the explosion and the country for miles around buried beneath ashes and the streams of lava which rushed down the mountain slopes.

How many people perished in this terrible event we shall never know. But since Vesuvius by its smoke and rumbling gave warning of what was to happen, it is clear that most of the population, though stricken with panic, had time to make their escape. The beautiful towns of Pompeii and Herculaneum were, however, overwhelmed and buried, and the slopes of the mountain, once green with orchard and vineyard, were now only wastes of smoking ashes.

Yet for us to-day the destruction of Pompeii has given one good result. In recent times the ashes have

been carefully dug away, and we can now see this old Roman city just as it was in the days of the Roman Empire. There are the streets, the market places, the theaters, the houses, the very ruts worn in the pavements by the passing carts and wagons. Even objects like loaves of bread in the oven and jugs of wine for sale in the shops were found just as people left them on that day of terror.



STREET OF FORTUNE, POMPEII  
*Showing ruts worn in pavement by carts and chariots*

Here, too, were discovered the skeletons of some of the unfortunates who could not flee.

Though all the other cities of the once great empire have fallen to hopeless ruin, the visitor to Pompeii can thus see just how the Romans lived and carried on their work and their play.

**48. Roman Houses.** A city like Pompeii was of course surrounded by a strong wall for defense. The houses were built very close together, and the streets were rather narrow. When crowded with people and carts it must have been a noisy place.

The houses in Pompeii usually had no windows looking out on the street, except in the second story. The light and air came through openings in the roof or from the small courtyard, which every good house had.

When the visitor entered the house of a well-to-do family he first passed through a small vestibule or open

space. Sometimes a dog was kept here. One house at Pompeii has a picture of a fierce dog in the paved floor, with the warning words, "Cavi canem," "Beware the dog."

After passing through a short hall, the visitor entered a large room, the main living room of the house. If the owner were rich it was adorned with statues and carvings. In the center was always a large opening in the roof, and beneath it a basin or pool to catch the rain.

Opening off the sides of this main room were little rooms and in some cases the stairway leading to the upper story. In the rear corner were two large alcoves, or sometimes rather large separate rooms. In one of these were kept the statues of the gods and of the ancestors of the family. In their honor the master of the house with his wife and children performed worship and offered sacrifices. The other corner room or alcove is thought to have been used as a dining room.

Directly at the rear of the main living room, and usually separated from it by curtains, was the room of the master of the house. We may call it his office or business room. Here he kept his accounts and had his strong box with its treasure.

Passing through the master's room we come next to the most striking part of the whole building. This was the large court or garden open to the sky, beautified by flowers and statues, and surrounded by a colonnade. Around this fine court



MOSAIC FROM FLOOR OF POMPEII  
HOUSE

were numerous rooms arranged according to the taste of the family. Here was the kitchen with dining rooms, storerooms, and private apartments.

Though Roman houses differed sometimes in small ways, all were on the same general plan. Sometimes, if the family were very wealthy, there would be a larger garden, with rows of terraces behind the residence. On the outside of the house, along the busy street, there were little shops or stores. These were rented to people who sold different articles. But such shops opened off the street and never into the house.

**49. How the Romans Lived.** In such a dwelling a well-to-do Roman and his family lived, surrounded by their slaves, who did all the hard work. Here, too, came every morning the master's "clients," that is, poor men who had put themselves under his protection. They wished him good morning, and he greeted them cordially by name, and sometimes even kissed them. A Roman

was proud if he had a great number of clients.

The clothing worn by the Romans was not much like ours. Beneath the warm Italian sky close fitting garments such as we wear were



INTERIOR OF ROMAN HOUSE

not needed. Indoors, the only clothing worn by a Roman man or boy was the "tunic." This was merely a

loose woolen shirt, with short sleeves, held up by a girdle at the waist. But when a Roman went forth in public he put on over this the famous "toga." This was a long and heavy white cloak wrapped about the body in such a way as to fall in graceful folds. The togas of men who held important offices were marked by a broad purple stripe on the border.

Not until a boy was old enough to be a full Roman citizen could he wear the man's toga. When he first put it on there was an impressive ceremony, when he was taken before a public officer at Rome and introduced by his father.

The Romans wore shoes and boots much like ours, but in the house they often used sandals. Hose or stockings they never wore. Workmen and sailors sometimes had caps or hats, but the wealthy usually went bareheaded, except when upon a journey.

Roman women wore three garments instead of two. Over the inner tunic was a longer outer covering, and on the street Roman ladies had a graceful cloak or mantle much like the toga, though it was never called by that name.

A Roman family generally rose very early in the morning, often about daylight. For breakfast they ate little, sometimes only bread and honey. The chief business of the day was done in the morning. About half-past eleven, as we reckon time, they had lunch. This, too, was a rather light meal. After lunch everybody went to sleep for an hour or so. This "siesta" was a regular part of the program for the day, and seldom indeed omitted.

Every afternoon the master of the house went forth to his bath, which in the city was usually enjoyed in one

of the magnificent public buildings erected by the emperor. Here the Roman met his friends and conversed with them or played games for exercise.



FIGURES IN ROMAN COSTUME

a, *Toga*; b, *tunic*; c, *tunic* worn by women; d, *stola* and *palla*, outer garments worn by Roman matrons

Finally he returned to a great dinner, which was to the wealthy the crowning enjoyment of the day. Instead of sitting at the table, as we do, the guests reclined on cushions. The meal occupied hours, and the diners were often entertained by slaves who played musical instruments and sang or danced. In later times, as the Romans grew more and more fond of luxury, the entertainment often went on far into the night, and many drank heavily of wine.

For the Roman children the task of the day was of course quite different. Until they were about seven they were taught at home, perhaps by their parents,

but more often by some educated slave. Then the boys usually, and the girls sometimes, went to school. School began very early, and the children often bought their breakfasts at some baker's shop on the way. The children of the wealthy were always in charge of reliable old slaves called "pedagogues," who went with them and carried their books.

In the earlier days of Rome not many subjects were taught at school,—only reading, writing, and a little

arithmetic. For music and the beautiful things which so delighted the Greeks the Romans at first cared little. But since the boys must some day be soldiers they were taught to swim, to ride, and to throw the javelin.

Later, after Greece had been conquered, the Romans became enthusiastic about everything Greek. Soon, in the higher schools, the Roman youths began to study the Greek language just as we now try to learn something of French or German. Greek teachers, who taught the poems of Homer and other Greek writings, also came to Rome.

Often the children of the rich were actually sent to Greece to visit Athens for a short time and perhaps to listen to the famous Greek philosophers.

But when the time approached to begin the real business of life, the sons of noble Romans all wanted to be statesmen and to hold public office, to become soldiers, or to be judges and lawyers. Though they had once been such a practical people, the Romans, like the Greeks, had come to have the foolish idea that all labor with the hands is fit only for slaves.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. In the center of Rome was the famous Forum or public square. 2. In their buildings the Romans copied the Greeks, but also used arches and domes. 3. The city of Rome was the busiest place in the world. 4. One of the grandest occasions was when a triumph was celebrated after a victory in war. 5. The Romans took a cruel joy in the combats of gladiators. 6. The city of Pompeii was buried by the ashes and lava from an eruption of Mt. Vesuvius. 7. Pompeii has now been uncovered, and we can thus see just how a Roman city looked. 8. A Roman house was not very much like ours. 9. The daily life of both grown people and children was also different in many ways from that of our day.

**Study Questions.** 1. How did the public buildings of Rome

differ from those of Greece? 2. Look at the picture of the Pantheon, and then describe it. 3. What are some of the things that you would have seen in the streets of Rome in the time of the emperors? 4. Describe a Roman triumph. 5. What were the gladiatorial shows? 6. How did the Romans feel as they looked at them? 7. Tell the story of the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius as if you had been one of those who fled from a villa near Pompeii. 8. What are some of the things that have been found in this city? 9. Describe a Roman house. 10. What are some of the ways in which it differed from our houses? 11. What seems to you the most beautiful feature of a Roman house? 12. How did the clothing of the Romans differ from ours? 13. Tell how a Roman family spent their day. 14. What were some of the ways in which a Roman school differed from yours?

**Suggested Readings.** Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 212-223, 239-250; Lovell, *Stories in Stone from the Roman Forum*, 1-66; Retold from "St. Nicholas": *Stories of Greece and Rome*, 119-198; Church, *Roman Life in the Days of Cicero*, 1-26; Guhl and Koner, *The Life of the Greeks and Romans Described from Antique Monuments*, 357-375, 390-424, 476-511.

## NEW THOUGHTS IN ROME

**50. Great Roman Writers.** It would be a great mistake indeed to think of all Romans as cruel or brutal. Among them, even in the days of the empire, were men who had high and noble thoughts.

When Greece was conquered, the best Italians were delighted by the poems and books, the temples and statues, of the subjugated people, and Greek art and learning soon became the fashion. Wealthy Romans took pride in having statues and pictures like those of the Greeks, and every educated Roman studied the Greek language. Books began to be prized.

The books of the Romans did not look very much like ours. They were nothing but long rolls of a kind

of paper made from the papyrus plant which grew only in Egypt. This paper was very beautiful, but it was brittle, and the papyrus books that have come down to us are badly cracked and broken. Since the printing press was unknown, the books had to be written by hand. The writing was in black ink and went across the paper in columns. Between the columns were lines in red ink. The books were rolled around sticks with ornamented ends and often tied with thongs. Sometimes the rolls had parchment cases or covers of some bright color like yellow or purple.

When a Roman was reading he held the book before him with both hands, slowly rolling up with his left hand what he had already finished and unrolling with his right the part of the book he had not yet seen. When he had finished, the beginning or top of the book would be inside and the end out. So, to prepare the book for the next reader, he had to unwind it all and roll it up the other way.

When a Roman scholar or poet had written a book and wished to publish it, he put it in the hands of the bookseller he had chosen. The bookseller had many skillful clerks whose business it was to make copies. But well trained though they were, they could turn out only pitifully few books as compared with even a hand press to-day. Every copy, moreover, had to be carefully examined lest mistakes be made. In ancient times only the rich, therefore, could afford to own or even see books.

When the copying was done, the Roman bookseller tacked up on his door the name of the book and that of the author. But there were no laws, as there are to-day, to prevent any one from making as many additional

copies as he chose. Unless the writer received a gift from some wealthy person he had mentioned in his book

he seems to have gained nothing but honor from the whole proceeding.

In matters of daily business the Romans did not usually write with ink on paper. Instead, they used tablets made of wood covered



After painting by C. Jalabert

HORACE AND FRIENDS LISTENING TO A READING BY VERGIL

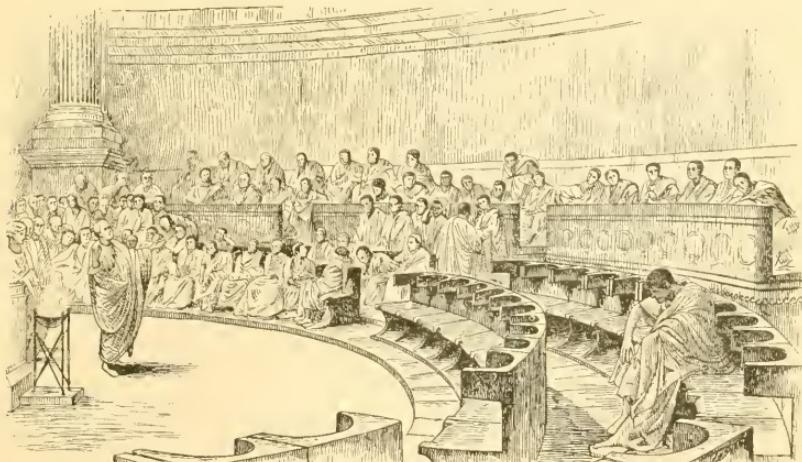
with wax. In place of a pen they used a sharp instrument called a stylus. With the point of this they traced the letters in the soft wax. The leaves of the tablets were often tied together and opened like those of our books.

At first all the best books were in Greek. But soon beautiful poems and notable books began to be written in Latin, and the best rulers, like the Emperor Augustus, protected and rewarded scholars. Some of the finest Roman writers are not unworthy of comparison with even the great men of Greece. Foremost among these stands the famous poet, Vergil. His greatest poem tells how, when the city of Troy was destroyed by the Greeks, one of the bravest Trojan heroes, Æneas, escaped with his trusty followers and after lengthy wanderings and strange adventures landed in Italy. These heroes, sang Vergil, were the ancestors of the Roman race.

An altogether different kind of writer was the much-loved Horace. No stirring deeds of gods and heroes did he sing, but rather amused all by his genial and quiet humor.

Another famous Roman was the great orator, Cicero, whose speeches are still studied by those who seek to improve themselves as orators and statesmen. By his eloquence Rome was once saved from bloodshed and possible destruction at the hands of certain desperate men, who, to escape from the consequences of their wicked deeds, plotted to overthrow the republic.

Yet, though the Romans thus had fine scholars and writers, most of them followed closely in the footsteps of the Greeks. In one respect, however, the Romans went far beyond any other ancient nation. Roman judges and lawyers were by far the greatest the world



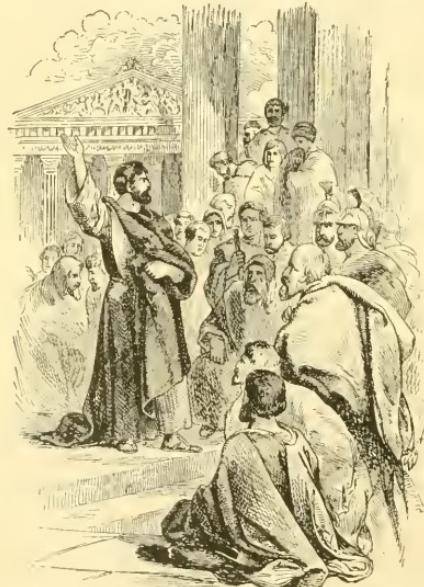
After painting by Macarri

CICERO SPEAKING IN THE ROMAN SENATE

had yet known. Even in our own day their law books are studied and admired, and teach us much that is useful.

There were famous philosophers in Roman times, too, though none equaled Socrates and Plato. Perhaps the greatest were those called "Stoics." They taught that men should never give way to pain or pleasure, but do their duty no matter what happens. When a man endures terrible pain or misfortune with calmness, we still sometimes say, "He is a Stoic."

**51. The Coming of Christianity.** The Stoics were good and noble men, but only a few very intelligent people could understand what they taught. If the Romans were to be saved from their cruelty and vice, something more was needed than the Stoic philosophy.



From an engraving after the original painting  
ST. PAUL PREACHING AT ATHENS

When it seemed that the world was to be ruined by its own wickedness, a wonderful thing happened. From Judaea, a far-distant province of the empire, came the strange tidings of the life and death of Jesus Christ, of Him who had perished on the cross but left behind a message of salvation and good cheer. Soon his disciples were preaching the news far and wide, and with their zeal overcoming all obstacles.

Nor was the message for the rich and great alone, for the new faith taught that all men are equal in the

sight of God, and the poorest and humblest can share equally in the Christian's reward. At the head of the teachers of the new religion were Peter, a fisherman, and Paul, a scholar, who knew how to speak so that all might understand. Though at first the high and noble would give little heed, many of the poor and lowly eagerly accepted the glad tidings.

**52. How the Early Christians Were Treated.** At the beginning the Roman emperors cared little about the Christians. But when their numbers increased, trouble came. The Christians were suspected of forming a dangerous secret organization. When they met privately to celebrate the Lord's Supper, it was thought that they plotted treason against Caesar. Under the laws of Rome people might believe what they liked about life and death, but all were required to worship the image of the emperor, head of the Roman state. This the Christians would not do. They thought it a sin to worship any one but God.

From time to time terrible persecution fell upon them. Those who would not obey the emperor were condemned to most awful sufferings. Often their death occurred in the amphitheater, and the spectators saw groups of Christians, men and women, kneel in prayer until wild beasts released from their cages sprang forth and devoured them.

The most terrible of all the persecutions was in the time of the brutal emperor Nero. This tyrant delighted the Roman mob by giving gladiatorial contests and games, but for his own pleasure he committed awful



Louvre, Paris  
EMPEROR NERO

crimes. According to a story which many people have believed, he cared so little for the welfare of the people that when the city of Rome caught fire he played and sang a poem that he had written about the destruction of Troy. When people cried out against his conduct, he cast the blame for the fire upon the Christians, and caused thousands to be put to death. He even lighted his gardens by having Christians bound to crosses and smeared with pitch, and then set on fire. Under Nero perished both St. Peter and St. Paul.

No wonder then that the early Christians met in secret places like the famous Catacombs, a name given to the narrow and dark underground passages constructed beneath a part of the city as burial places for

the dead. Many of these galleries were dug out by the Christians themselves, and here may still be seen the resting places of their dead, marked by the cross and by other symbols of the new faith.



CHRISTIANS WORSHIPING IN THE CATACOMBS

*The Roman Catacombs were originally quarries. Though for the most part long, narrow passages, there were occasionally larger chambers for worship and for burial places*

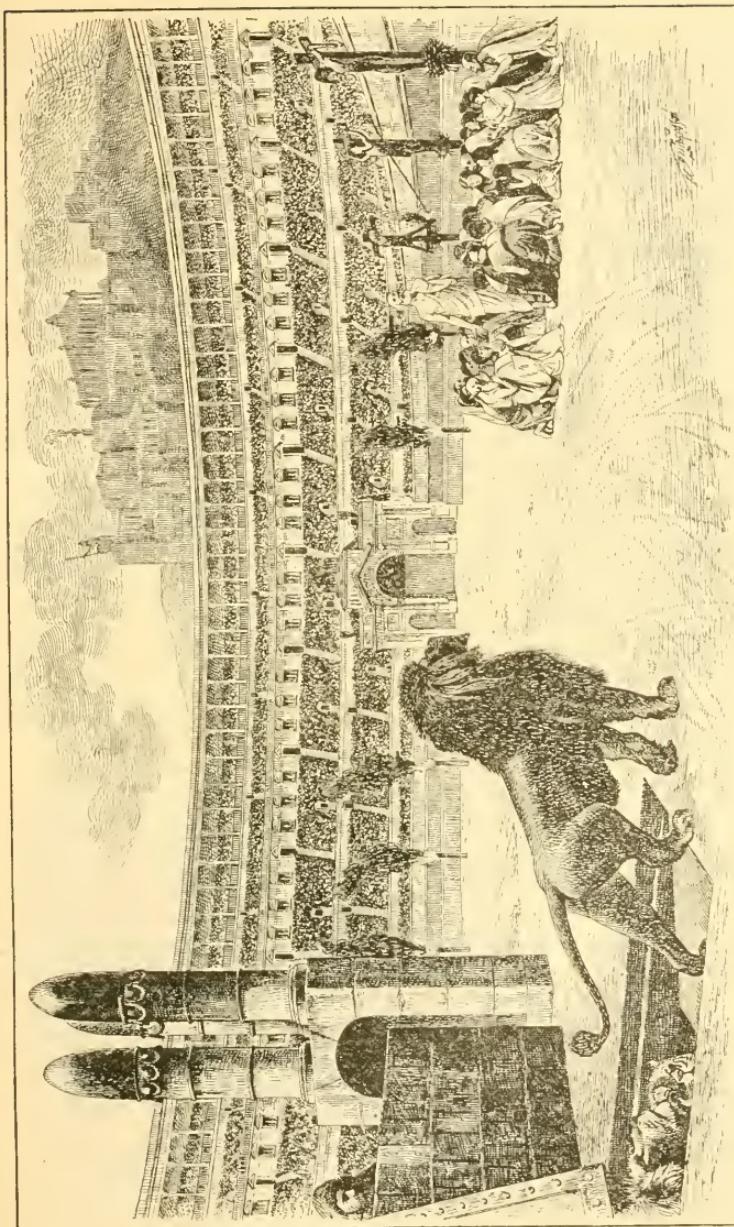
### 53. Christianity Triumphs.

But sword and fire could not crush the religion of Christ. An ever increasing number of men and women adopted the faith which taught the martyrs to die so bravely.

After a painting by Gerome

THE LAST PRAYER

*Christian martyrs in prayer as savage beasts advanced to tear them to pieces before the gaze of the Roman populace*



Finally there came a great civil war in Rome, waged by a number of powerful men each of whom claimed to

be emperor. Of these one was Constantine, who was proclaimed Caesar by the troops in the island of Britain. Since Constantine's mother was a Christian, he was well disposed toward this religion, and many Christians joined his forces.

**CONSTANTINE**  
*After the bust in Church of S. Giovanni in Lativano, Rome*

enemies there was suddenly seen a cross blazing in the sky, and, underneath, the words, "In this sign thou shalt conquer." At any rate, it is certain this able general thought it best to win the support of the Christians by putting the cross on his standard. (312 A.D.)

Under it he overthrew and destroyed all his foes and then triumphantly established his power as Caesar. As a result he declared that Christians should be tolerated, and he was finally baptized a Christian himself.

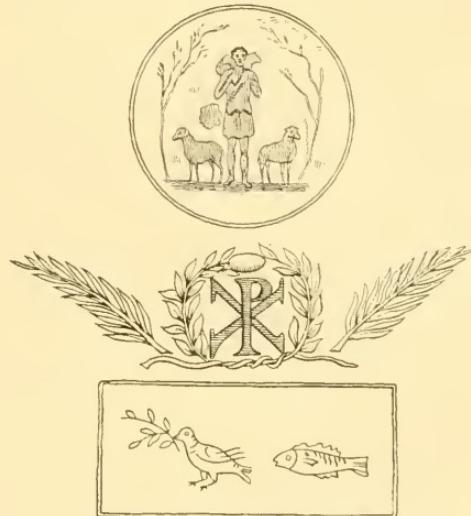


*After painting by A. Chappel*  
**CONSTANTINE BEHOLDING THE VISION**

What a great change this was, when a supporter of the new faith occupied the imperial throne of the Caesars!

The worshipers of the old gods struggled hard, but the world was too wise to believe any longer in Jupiter and Juno. In time the pagan belief itself was forbidden, and the temples of the gods changed into Christian churches. Where once pagans had sacrificed to the deities of Olympus, now were heard Christian hymns and prayers, and Christian bishops and priests appeared everywhere in the empire beside Roman officials, judges, and soldiers.

Just as the Romans had formerly shown themselves able to organize their vast empire, now they showed themselves equally skillful in establishing the new religion. In each village and country district a priest or minister was placed to preach to the people and conduct service in the church. Every large city had its bishop, who had control over all the priests in the surrounding region. In the capital of each province was the archbishop, a still more dignified officer, and finally, in the greatest cities like Rome, Constantinople, and Alexandria, were the most powerful bishops, or "patriarchs," of all.



EARLY CHRISTIAN SYMBOLS FOUND IN THE CATACOMBS

*Early Christian art represented Jesus under numerous symbols, the commonest being the lamb and the fish. The Holy Ghost was represented by a dove; the olive branch denoted peace; the palm, triumph*

Thus the Roman church was like another great Roman empire. But it was an empire of the souls of men rather than of their bodies.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The Romans became very fond of Greek poetry and art. 2. Among the greatest of all Romans are the poets, Vergil and Horace, and the orator, Cicero. 3. The philosophers, called Stoics, taught that men should lead noble lives. 4. The Christian religion was taught by Peter and Paul. 5. The first Christians were mainly poor and humble men and women. 6. The early Christians had to endure terrible persecution, and many lost their lives in the amphitheater. 7. Finally the great emperor, Constantine, freed the Christians from persecution. 8. Christianity then became the religion of Rome, and the pagan worship was forbidden.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why did the Romans do well to imitate the poems and statues of the Greeks? 2. Who were the greatest Roman writers and scholars? 3. State an important idea held by the Stoics. 4. Why were the poor so willing to accept Christianity? 5. If the early Christians were good men, why were they persecuted? 6. Tell the story about Nero and the Christians. 7. How did the feeling of the Romans regarding Christianity change as they saw the Christians die so bravely? 8. Who was Constantine? 9. Why did he put the cross on his standard? 10. What was the chief result of his victory over his rivals? 11. Name the various kinds of officers in the Christian church of the Roman Empire.

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 215-222; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 285-354; Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 173-183; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*; Church, *Stories from Virgil*, 2-95, 210-266.

### THE DOWNFALL OF ROME

**54. The Decline of the Roman Empire.** Now that Christianity had won, it might be thought that the

Roman Empire would flourish. But the victory came too late; Rome was doomed.

No one in all the empire had any real power but the Caesar, and many of the later emperors were weak and foolish men. The people were burdened by heavy taxes, and this money was wasted on things which did no good. Everywhere existed the curse of slavery, and the people had forgotten how to be brave in war. Even the wealthy and intelligent Romans, weakened by luxury, could no longer lead in peace or on the battlefield. Learning itself declined. No more fine poems or books were written, and the buildings were not so beautiful as before. The world seemed to be dying.

In course of time things would perhaps have come right again, just as a man recovers from a long sickness, but this was not to be. Outside of the Roman Empire, in the region of dark forests across the Rhine and the Danube, had long dwelt a fierce and sturdy race called the Teutons, or Germans. When the Romans were conquering all the other peoples it seemed as if Germany, too, would fall beneath their sway.

But the Teutons dearly loved their freedom, and when Augustus had succeeded in subduing some of their tribes, they suddenly revolted, under the lead of a brave chief named Hermann. As the legions of the great Roman emperor were toiling through the wild Teutoburger forest in pursuit of the rebels, Hermann and his strong warriors suddenly fell upon them and destroyed the whole force.

The Romans were thus taught that Germany must be free. Though they had many other wars with the Teutons, and sometimes defeated them in battle, even

the strongest Caesars had to content themselves with guarding their own frontier.

Bands of the Germans soon began trying to break over the Roman boundaries for the sake of plunder. One large party which thus invaded Gaul had been destroyed by Julius Caesar. But though constantly driven back, the Germans kept returning to the attack. A large part of the Roman army had to be kept on the Rhine and the Danube to check them. But as the empire grew weaker and weaker, this became always more difficult to do.

Strong rulers like Constantine the Great tried to strengthen the empire so that it might better resist the barbarians. He thought it would be better if the provinces in the east should have a capital of their own, since the city of Rome was too far away. On the celebrated strait now called the Bosphorus had long stood an ancient Greek city called Byzantium. This was just the place, thought the great emperor, to found a second Rome. So he rebuilt the old Greek town and named it after himself, Constantinople,—the city of Constantine. Spreading out like a great crescent from the blue waters of its harbor, this magnificent city soon equaled and even excelled Rome in beauty and importance.

The founding of Constantinople and other changes greatly strengthened the Roman Empire for a time. But when weak Caesars came into power all went wrong again.

**55. The Downfall of Rome (476 A.D.)** Now appeared a new and terrible danger. From central Asia swept, like a swarm of destroying locusts, a fierce race of wild horsemen called the Huns. Mounted on shaggy ponies,

hideous of form, and cruel and savage in disposition, these people, with their overwhelming numbers, swept all before them.

Pressed by such enemies, the German tribes strove more desperately than ever to cross the Roman boundaries, and at last the weakening legions

gave way before them. When a Teutonic people called the Goths appeared on the Danube, and begged permission to cross, the Romans made the fatal mistake of allowing this huge multitude of barbarians to enter their territory. But when they had crossed the river the Goths soon defied the Roman emperor, defeated his army, and slew him in a great battle at Adrianople.

All chance of keeping out the barbarians was now lost, and one tribe of Germans after another swarmed over the Rhine and the Danube, pillaging and destroying.

But far more cruel and destructive than the German tribes were the fierce Huns, who, under the leadership of their terrible chieftain, Attila, followed at their heels. To the terrified Romans it seemed, indeed, that the Huns left nothing but smoking ashes in their track, and with trembling lips they repeated Attila's awful boast, that the grass never grew where his horse's hoofs had trod. It seemed that before their onslaught civilization would be blotted out.

So great was the danger to all, that Goths and Romans



From a print after the painting by Ulpiano Checa  
THE COMING OF THE HUNS

combined their forces against the Huns, and on the battlefield of Châlons, in Gaul, the fate of the empire was decided. Long the issue was in doubt. But when the king of the Goths was slain, his warriors charged with such desperate courage to avenge him that the Huns gave way. When night came, Attila was beaten and Europe saved.

Though the Huns were still troublesome and later penetrated even into Italy, they were never again so dangerous, and finally withdrew eastward. The present people of Hungary, now justly ranked among the most

civilized nations of Europe, are believed by many people to be the descendants of Attila's ferocious warriors.

But though the empire was thus saved from the Huns, conditions were still bad enough. The Teutonic tribes kept pressing in, and though they were not indeed savages, they wrought destruction only a little less terrible than had the Huns themselves.



ALARIC DESCENDING ON ROME

Less and less able to resist them became the enfeebled Roman legions. When the Eternal City herself was

taken and sacked by the northern invaders, a long night for art, learning, and industry began.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The Roman Empire was benefited by Christianity, but weakened by many other things, such as slavery, heavy taxes, and the feebleness of many of the emperors. 2. The Romans had never been able to conquer the brave Teutonic tribes who lived across the Rhine and the Danube. 3. These people kept trying to break into the empire. 4. As it became hard to keep them out, able emperors like Constantine did their best to strengthen the Roman power. 5. Finally the terrible Huns came into Europe from central Asia. 6. They drove some of the Teutons before them into Roman territory. 7. The Huns were finally defeated at the battle of Châlons. 8. The Teutonic tribes kept coming into the Roman Empire to plunder and to conquer. 9. The city of Rome itself was finally captured and sacked.

**Study Questions.** 1. Make a list of things which weakened the Roman Empire. 2. Who were the Teutons? 3. Why did the Romans not conquer them? 4. Why did the Teutons wish to invade Roman territory? 5. Explain how Constantine tried to strengthen the Roman Empire. 6. Why is Constantinople well situated to be a great city? 7. What was the character of the Huns? 8. Tell the results of their coming into Europe. 9. Why was the battle of Châlons more important than most battles? 10. Why was it better that the Roman Empire should be conquered by the Teutons rather than by the Huns?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 223-237; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 374-443; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*.

### THE COMING OF THE TEUTONS

#### 56. What Kind of People the Early Germans Were.

When the Teutons, or Germans, dwelt in the forests of northern Europe they were a simple, barbarous people. Perhaps they knew hardly more than the best tribes of

American Indians. Unlike the dark-skinned inhabitants of Italy and Gaul, the Germans were tall and fair. When clad in the skins of beasts and waving their spears and two-edged swords, they rushed to the attack with their fierce blue eyes gleaming through their long yellow or red hair, it is no wonder that they often seemed like giants to the Roman soldiers who opposed them.

The ancient Germans were divided into tribes such as the Angles, the Franks, and the Saxons, some of which have given their names to important countries or districts of modern Europe like England (Angle-land), France, and Saxony. Since most of all the Teutons

delighted in war, they were continually engaged in savage conflicts among themselves. They loved daring deeds and adventures, and often went upon distant expeditions in quest of plunder and excitement. Peace these barbarians thought stupid. So they spent their days idling and gambling.

Unlike the people of the Roman Empire, who bowed down before Caesar, these tall warriors felt that every man should be free to do as he pleased. Some of the tribes had kings, but when anything of importance was to be decided all the freemen came



A TEUTONIC WARRIOR

together in a meeting called a "folk-moot." Here, with their weapons in their hands, they listened to what

the chiefs proposed and shouted out their approval or dissent. If the king died or was slain in battle, the warriors chose another, raising him on a shield with loud cries and the clashing of weapons.

Every tribe, every district, even every village had its meeting, and if all the warriors could not come together, it was the custom for the villages to send picked men to speak for them as representatives. Yet even when some question had been decided, each warrior was free to do as he pleased. If he did not wish to take part in an expedition, no one could compel him to go. It was deemed cowardly, however, to refrain from war.

The Germans knew nothing of cities or towns, but dwelt far apart in villages in the wilderness. When later they saw the Roman cities, they despised and often destroyed them. At first they lived by hunting and fishing, but in time learned how to till the soil in rude ways. The land around each village was thought, however, to belong equally to all the people living in it, and each year the fields were divided anew by lot. So one warrior did not often become much richer than the rest.

These rough old Teutons had some fine ideas. They



RAISING THE CHIEF ON A SHIELD

held women in great respect, and women often had much influence among them. Frequently they went with the

warriors to the battlefield, and by cry and gesture urged them on to brave deeds. Here, too, the women cared for the wounded, and in time of dire need they even mingled in the fray.



ODIN, ALL-FATHER OF THE GODS

as gods and goddesses. Their chief god, the sky, was called Odin or Woden, and another fierce old god was Thor, who made the thunder with his huge war hammer. Even yet we call some of the days of the week by names taken from those of the old German gods, as Wednesday (Wodensday) and Thursday (Thorsday).

The gods, thought the Teutons, loved brave men, and all who met death fighting courageously were taken to Woden's great hall, Valhalla. When a battle was raging the daughters of Woden, called the Valkyries, hovered over the slaughter and picked out the best and bravest warriors to grace their father's board. The chosen men fell; but the Valkyries, mounted on magic steeds, at once carried them through the sky to Woden's palace. Here they would forever feast, and drink from the skulls of their enemies.

Among the hero stories of the early Teutons the most famous are those set forth in a long poem called the Song of the Niebelungs. Though this was not written down until after the life of the German tribes had been greatly changed, its incidents, filled with fighting and

adventurous deeds, show that it must have been composed at a very early time.

The Song of the Niebelungs tells of the life and death of a strong hero named Siegfried. Armed with a magic sword and provided with a magic cap by which he could become invisible, Siegfried slew a terrible dragon and won a great treasure. But unhappily this treasure brought a curse to whomsoever owned it. Urged on by the fierce Brunhild, a woman whom Siegfried had once loved, a cruel warrior named Hagen stabbed the hero from behind and slew him. But Siegfried's wife thirsted for revenge, and in the end brought all his enemies to miserable slaughter.

Such stories could only come from a race which delighted in red conflict and the clash of arms.

Like most barbarous people, the ancient Teutons had other bad faults besides fondness for battle. Perhaps the worst was their love for strong drink. But though they were a rough folk, with crude notions on many things, they became great because they had the ability to learn.

To Americans they must always seem important, for most of us have more or less of their blood in our veins.

**57. Conquests of the German Tribes.** At first the Teutons often made raids into the Roman Empire merely for plunder. But in course of time many Germans were allowed to enter peacefully. Many enlisted in the Roman armies and learned to become good Roman soldiers.



THOR, GOD OF THUNDER

Others were put upon the land to take the place of peasants who had died or been slain. But though great numbers thus came into Roman territory, there were always more behind. Finally whole tribes of Germans left their native wilds and wandered into southern Europe, seeking new homes. With each band of fair-haired warriors came a long line of lumbering carts, in which they brought their wives, their children, and their rude household goods.

When the Roman legions could no longer drive them back, terrible destruction was often wrought by these people. Rich cities were plundered and ruined, and whole districts of the country made almost deserts. Rome itself, so long the proud capital of the world, was finally taken by the Goths under their great chief Alaric, and for three days given over to sack and plunder.

But though the Teutonic tribes were barbarous they were by no means savages. When they had overthrown the Roman governors and pillaged to their heart's content, they finally settled down in different parts of the Roman territory, establishing kingdoms of their own under the rule of their strong war chiefs. Thus the Goths settled in Spain, the Franks in France, and the Lombards in northern Italy.

The invaders took possession of much of the land for their own use, but by no means all the Roman inhabitants were slain. They remained in subjection to their new German masters, and, as centuries rolled by, gradually intermarried with them and thus formed new peoples. So from the union of the conquering Teutons and the conquered Romans came the French, the Spaniards, and the Italians of our day. Since in southern Europe the

Roman people were far more numerous than their conquerors, the Italians and Spaniards have much more Roman than Teutonic blood. In northern Europe, the blue eyes and fair hair of the people show that they are descended mainly from the old German warriors.

But after the coming of the Teutons what had been the Roman Empire was much changed. These rough people knew little of civilized life, and of course could not give up their warlike ways at once. Even after they had begun to settle amid the conquered Romans they continued to carry on fierce wars with each other. One German king continually attacked another, and when a ruler died his sons were almost sure to contend in bloody contest for his power. Bloodshed and massacre now took the place of that peace which the Roman Empire had once secured with its strong hand.

No more cities were built, no more roads were constructed, no more books were written. Civilization was indeed at low ebb. The time called the "Middle Ages" had begun for Europe. It was a period of darkness and cruelty.



TEUTONS PLUNDERING A ROMAN CITY

**58. Britain Conquered by the Angles and Saxons (449 A.D.).** For three hundred and fifty years the Romans had ruled Britain, the land

once visited by the legions of Julius Caesar. In their day a traveler could have seen fair cities like York, Lincoln, and London adorned with temples and baths. Here and there through the country appeared the splendid villas of great Romans, and hard white roads ran through the land like threads of a spider web. The native Britons, too, who had once seemed to Caesar merely tattooed savages, were rapidly learning Roman ways, and when Christianity became the religion of Rome, Britain also shared its benefits.

It is true that in the rugged hills of the north, in what is now Scotland, there still lived clans of sturdy fighters whom the Romans could not subdue. But to prevent these Picts and Scots, as they were called, from plundering the civilized Britons, the Romans set up a great wall, with forts and towers, which ran entirely across the island. With this protection, and guarded by Roman legions, Britain seemed safe.

But when the Teutonic tribes began to carry fire and sword into Italy itself, Rome could no longer spare her soldiers to guard this distant island. To the dismay of the Britons, the Roman legions marched away and took ship for home.

Upon this unfortunate people trouble soon came. In fierce plundering raids the Picts and Scots broke through the wall. The Britons, once so bold, knew no longer how to repel them. Whither should they turn for aid?

In those days might have been seen from the headlands of Britain the long boats of certain German tribes who lived across the North Sea, just where Denmark and Germany now come together. These piratical

people were the Angles, Saxons, and other tribes whom we usually speak of together as the Anglo-Saxons. They were much like other Teutonic tribes, but instead of invading the Roman Empire by land it was their custom to put to sea in their long ships and prowl about the coasts in quest of booty and adventure. What easy prey they would now find in Britain!

In their trouble the foolish Britons, it is said, made the mistake of inviting a band of these fierce warriors, led by two tall chiefs called Hengist and Horsa, to land and help them against the Picts. For the Anglo-Saxons it was a pleasant task. They came on shore, drove back the Picts, and then, since they saw how green and fertile the land was, decided to stay. When the Britons objected they fell upon them and overthrew them with great slaughter.

Soon other parties of Anglo-Saxons came, landing here and there upon the coast, and seizing the land. The Britons saw themselves despoiled of their country.

But the Britons were naturally a brave people and soon plucked up courage. For one hundred and fifty years they struggled foot by foot and inch by inch with the Angles, who kept coming in ever increasing numbers. Sometimes the Britons were victorious, especially under the lead of a great prince whom in their stories they called King Arthur. But in the long run they could not resist the strong and sturdy Anglo-Saxons. So in the



ROMAN REMAINS IN GREAT BRITAIN  
*The Lighthouse, Dover Castle*

end the whole country became Angle-Land, or, as we say, England. The tall, blue-eyed Teutonic invaders were

the forefathers of the modern English and, therefore, of many of us Americans.

But how England was now changed! The splendid Roman cities were ruined; villas and baths were gone. The Anglo-Saxons knew only how to live as they had done in their native German forests. No one could then foresee that these fierce people, in the course of centuries, were to become one of the leading civilized races of Europe.

As for the Britons, those who were not slain or made slaves took refuge in the rough mountains along the west coast. Here their descendants still live. Since they could not understand their speech the Angles had called them Welsh, or "strangers," and we still name their country Wales. The Welsh have never entirely adopted English ways, nor have they ever quite forgotten the time when all Britain was theirs.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The ancient Teutons were tall, fair-haired barbarians. 2. They loved freedom so much that they would submit only to chiefs whom they themselves chose. 3. All important matters among them were decided by popular



TYPICAL WELSH PEOPLE

meetings. 4. They held women in great respect. 5. Among the gods whom they worshiped, Woden and Thor were the most important. 6. When the Teutons first came into the Roman Empire they wrought great destruction. 7. Later they settled down and intermarried with the people whom they conquered. 8. Their coming nearly destroyed civilization, and brought the dark period called the Middle Ages. 9. One of the most important of the Teutonic peoples was the Anglo-Saxons, who occupied England.

**Study Questions.** 1. What kind of people were the early Teutons? 2. Name some of the Teutonic tribes. 3. How did the Teutons show their love for freedom? 4. Why did they dislike the Roman way of living? 5. Describe the religion of the early Germans. 6. How was it like that of the Greeks and Romans? 7. What did the Teutons do when they first came into Roman territory? 8. How did their conduct afterward change? 9. Where did the Goths settle? the Franks? the Lombards? 10. Why did not the Teutons carry on the Roman civilization? 11. What was the character of the Middle Ages? 12. How did the island of Britain appear when it was ruled by the Romans? 13. Why did the Romans leave Britain? 14. What troubles came upon the Britons after the Romans went? 15. Who were the Anglo-Saxons? 16. Why did they decide to stay in Britain? 17. Tell how Britain became England. 18. What became of the Britons?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *European Hero Stories*, 1-30, 54-60 and *England's Story*, 1-17; Harding, *The Story of the Middle Ages*; Haaren and Poland, *Famous Men of the Middle Ages*; Dutton, *Little Stories of Germany*; Blaisdell, *Stories from English History*, 1-21; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of England*.

## HOW THE TEUTONS LEARNED FROM ROME

**59. The Germans Become Christians.** It took centuries for Europe to become once more as enlightened as it had been under the Romans. Only very gradually did the Teutonic conquerors lay aside their rough character

and accept civilized life. That they ever did so was due mainly to Christianity.



From an old print  
ROMAN BISHOP AND PRIEST IN  
THE TIME OF ST. AUGUSTINE

When the Roman Empire fell in ruin the Christian church did not fall with it. On the contrary, as the government became weak the wretched people looked more and more to their bishops and priests for help and guidance, and the influence of the clergy increased. The Bishop of Rome, whom we call the pope, became more important than ever before.

The simple-minded German warriors, though often violent and brutal, were nevertheless filled with respect for the knowledge of the

Romans and were especially struck with awe by the ceremonies of the Christian worship and the venerable appearance of its ministers.

Some of the Teutonic tribes had been converted to Christianity even before the invasions began. All of them were won to the religion of Christ not long afterward. So easily did they give up their old pagan ideas about Woden and Thor that it does not seem that their belief in their gods could ever have been very deep. How strange a fact indeed was this, that at the very moment when Rome was losing her rule she should give her religion to her conquerors!

Among those who accepted the new faith was Clovis, the famous king of the Franks, a leader known for his warlike ability. His wife, already a Christian, had often

pleaded with him to accept Christ, but the fierce barbarian had always refused. At last, it is said, he engaged in a great battle with a strong tribe called the Alemanni. Before their onrush the warriors of Clovis gave way. It seemed that all was lost. Then at last Clovis called upon the name of Christ, promising that if the God of the Christians would give him victory he would become a Christian. Soon the Franks rallied, and the Alemanni were conquered. Thus, in fulfillment of his vow, Clovis was baptized a Christian and with him his whole army.

**60. How Missionaries Taught the Germans.** Wonderful indeed is the story of the brave Christian missionaries, who, counting their lives as nothing in the service of God, preached the gospel to the Germans. The labors of many of these were directed by the powerful pope, Gregory the Great, one of the most remarkable men of this whole period. Though burdened with innumerable duties and cares, he threw his whole soul into the work of converting the heathen.

Having been struck by the beauty of some English slaves whom he saw exposed for sale in Rome, Gregory became especially eager to have Christianity preached to the Anglo-Saxons. Unable to go himself, he entrusted the mission to a brave man named Augustine, and forty companions. It was a perilous task.



A FRANKISH WARRIOR

Yet as it turned out, the Anglo-Saxon king, Ethelbert, in whose territory they landed, received them kindly, for

his good wife Bertha, a Frankish princess, was a follower of the new faith. Bearing before them a silver cross and a picture of Christ, and chanting their beautiful service, Augustine and his companions came



GREGORY THE GREAT VIEWING THE ANGLO-SAXON YOUTHS EXPOSED FOR SALE IN THE SLAVE MARKET

before the king and explained to him their religion. So impressed was he that he allowed them to remain and permitted them to worship in an old church which the Romans had built when they ruled Britain. Finally Ethelbert and most of his people were baptized.

Then Augustine and his followers preached the word of Christ in other parts of England, and in the end the whole island was won.

Among all the missionaries one of the greatest was St. Boniface, himself an Englishman. Spurred on by zeal for Christ and encouraged by the pope, this fearless man penetrated into the dark forests of Germany and preached before the assemblies of fierce warriors. On one occasion he even hewed down a great oak which the people held sacred to Woden, and from its timbers constructed a Christian chapel. Awed by his majestic and venerable appearance, they dared not lift hand against him. Through his efforts much of Germany

become Christianized. The peaceful missionary had conquered where even the legions of Caesar Augustus had met defeat.

It must not be supposed, however, that when the fierce barbarians were baptized they at once gave up their cruel ways and became gentle and peace loving. Too often they merely called themselves Christians without understanding what the new religion really meant. For centuries many of the people of Europe remained almost as cruel and bloodthirsty as when they were pagans. Yet a beginning had been made, and amid all the strife the Christian church and its clergy never ceased to work for peace and righteousness.

**61. Who the Monks Were.** Among the Christian missionaries many belonged to the class of people called monks.

We all know how hard it is to be good when there is so much in the world about us to make us think of evil. In the days when Christianity first came into the Roman Empire, life was much worse than it is.



ST. AUGUSTINE PREACHING BEFORE KING ETHELBERT

now. It seemed that everybody was cruel and faithless, and the whole world given over to wickedness.

Many of the early Christians felt that the only way to be saved was to flee from all other men. Some took refuge in wild and lonely places, where they engaged in constant prayer. They lived on scanty food and wore the coarsest clothing that they might escape the sin of pride and vainglory. These men were hermits.



From an old German print

ST. BONIFACE HEWING DOWN THE OAK  
Through the efforts of St. Boniface the missionary movement, which had been largely independent of control, was brought under the direction of Rome

But not many people could be hermits. Others banded themselves together and thus went in little companies to dwell apart. Withdrawing to some waste place, perhaps to a lonely island or to some wild mountain region, they constructed with their own hands a building called a monastery. Here, clad in coarse robes and bound by their rules to constant fasting and prayer, they lived secure, as they hoped, from many of the world's temptations. Men who thus withdrew from the world were called monks, but women were known as nuns.

All their lives were governed by the rule of their society or "order." The most famous rule was that made by St. Benedict. According to this all the monks must live in absolute poverty. Whatever they had, even their coarse robes, belonged not to each monk but to the whole order. Monks must obey absolutely the "abbot," that is, the brother whom they chose to be head of the monastery. And they must never marry.

Each brother must spend much time in his own little cell. At certain hours, however, all engaged together in worship in the chapel. Other kinds of service were also required. Some time must be spent each day in study or in copying useful books. At other hours the brothers must labor tilling and improving the land.

Thus when other men were thinking of little but war and bloodshed, the faithful monks and nuns prayed and studied and labored. These humble people, clad in sackcloth, thinking not of themselves but only of their Heavenly Father, were doing more good than most of the kings with their crowns and swords.

And so the monks prospered. Often their first rude structures grew into great and beautiful stone buildings. In the center of such a large monastery were the



From an old print  
BENEDICTINE OR BLACK MONKS  
*From the beginning education has been one of the principal works of the Benedictines*

"cloisters," open yards or courts with fine covered walks where the brothers could stroll up and down without

being disturbed. Each monastery had its church, its library stored with precious books, and its lofty "chapter hall" where the monks held their meetings. Then there were the rows of "cells," or little rooms where the monks slept or retired for meditation in private. Besides these there were mills, workshops, and other necessary buildings for labor of various kinds. Indeed, many of the monasteries



After an engraving in Green's History of England  
MONK COPYING MANUSCRIPT, 1200 A.D.

Often the monasteries were the only places of refuge, and here the writings of the Romans were copied and preserved

became more like villages than single buildings.

Round about stretched the fertile fields which in the beginning the labor of the monks had won back from swamp or forest.

By the end of the Middle Ages there was hardly a district in all Europe which could not point with pride to

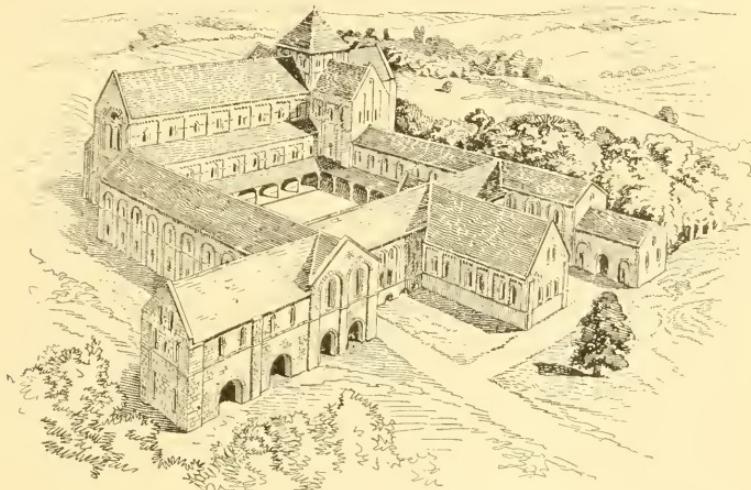


MONKS TILLING THE SOIL  
As the monks were the teachers of the world, agriculture as well as learning became their care

some monastery famous for learning and piety. Among the most celebrated of all are the mighty house of Cluny

in France, where the great pope, Gregory VII, was once a monk, and the very ancient monastery of St. Albans in England.

The monks cared for the sick; they sheltered the poor; they entertained weary travelers. But this was not all. When hardly anybody else could even read, the monks studied the writings of the past and recopied them that they might be the better kept. They were almost



After the restoration of Kirkstall Abbey

A NORMAN MONASTERY

*This monastery, near Leeds, in Yorkshire, England, dates from 1152 and was built by the Cistercians, otherwise known as the Gray or White Monks*

the only teachers of that dark and far-away time, and in the monasteries there were often famous schools. The monks kept records and wrote books, too, which tell us almost all we know about the Middle Ages.

There were of course many bad monks who went to the monasteries because they were lazy or too cowardly to fight. But in the main the monks were the best and most intelligent men of that time.

No wonder that they were the bravest missionaries and that from them the church often chose its popes and bishops. Even kings and rulers sometimes named them as their chief advisers. Without them, life in the Middle Ages could hardly have gone on.

**62. Charles the Great Revives Civilization.** Under the power of Christianity and its monks civilization in Europe began to revive somewhat. After three hundred years of barbarism and confusion, some signs of a desire for better things began to appear. This is shown especially in the work of Charles the Great, or, as he is often called, Charlemagne.

Among the Teutonic tribes which invaded the Roman Empire none were fiercer than the Franks. These people, whose early home was along the Rhine, had crossed that river and overrun Gaul, as France was then called. As they advanced all was ruin and destruction. But the Franks settled down to rule the country they had subdued and Clovis, their leader, had, as we have seen, accepted Christianity. Thus he became the friend and ally of the Pope of Rome.

Nevertheless the Frankish kings so loved fighting that they engaged in constant wars with the rulers of other tribes. There were bloody civil wars, too, among the Franks themselves. It is tiresome, indeed, to read of all the bloodshed of their early history.

But the Franks were good fighters and gradually got the better of the tribes about them. No doubt this was partly due to the fact that they were friends of the pope, and so the Romans, who often disliked other German peoples, preferred to be ruled by them. So strong did they become that when the terrible Arabs from Africa

conquered Spain and invaded Gaul, the Franks, under their brave leader, Charles of the Hammer (Charles Martel), marched against them and defeated them.

The grandson of this Charles Martel was Charles the Great. He was a tall and strongly-made man who like a true Frank loved riding, swimming, and all manly exercises. Though rather stout, none could excel him in such sports. He seemed tireless, and during all his long reign was always making distant expeditions at the head of his armies.

Each spring he gathered his forces and toiled off through the rough forests on some great campaign. Again and again he marched into Germany, and subdued the still unconquered tribes of that region. On other occasions he journeyed into Italy, and protected his friend the pope against his enemies. The Arabs of Spain, too, felt his power. Before his death he had brought all the region now included in France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Germany, Switzerland, a part of Austria, northern Italy, and a little of Spain under his control. Since the days of Rome no such great power had been seen.

It is not strange that a king of that warlike time should be a great conqueror. But it is strange that in his warlike and restless life Charles should find time for many other things besides war.

Though he had little education, he was so fond of learning that during his meals he always had some one read to him. He could speak Latin and understand a little Greek. At great expense he invited scholars from all parts of Europe, like the Englishman Alcuin, to come to his court.

He even had a school established in his own home, the famous School of the Palace, that his children and those of his great nobles might be properly taught. So fond of this school was Charles that whenever he was able he went to it himself and asked all kinds of questions of the teachers. Charles even tried to learn to write, and used to keep his writing materials under his pillow when he slept that he might practice writing if he were wakeful. But the huge hand of the great warrior had hard work to guide the pen, and he could never do much more than sign his name.



From an old print  
CHARLES THE GREAT AT THE SCHOOL OF  
THE PALACE

Charles encouraged the clergy to study that they might teach correctly the word of God, and helped them to establish schools in many of the principal cities. So anxious was he that everybody should learn that he commanded every priest to call together the boys of his neighborhood and to teach them to read. It may seem odd to us that no ruler had thought of this before, but the warlike kings of that

day had in mind only conquest and slaughter.

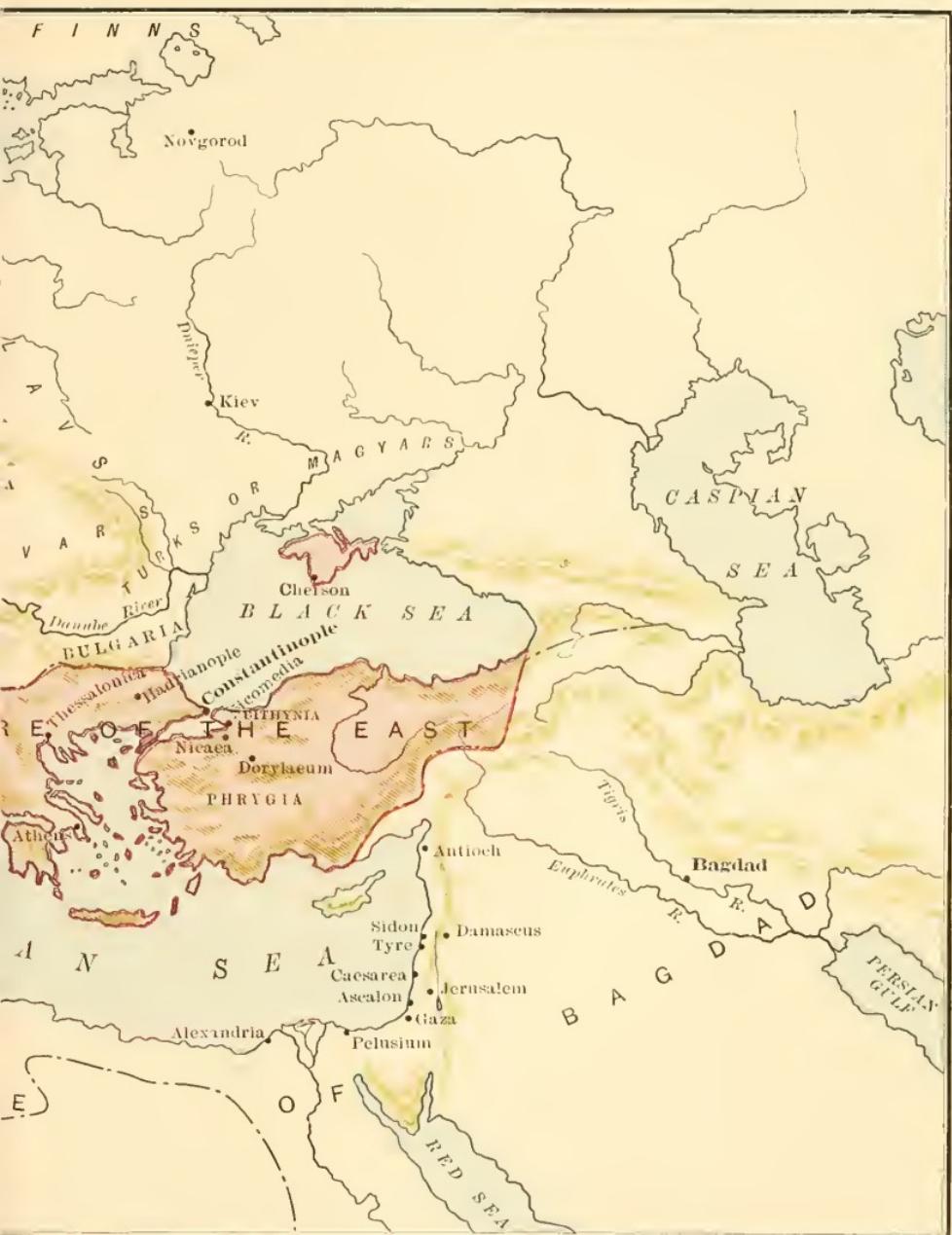
The Christian religion, too, Charles loved, though his



*A T L A N T*



## THE EMPIRE OF C



CHARLES THE GREAT

Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company



way of advancing it was a rough one. At the point of the sword he forced thousands of the barbarous warriors whom he conquered to wade into rivers and be baptized by his priests. What a ridiculous picture those old heathen must have made as they splashed unwillingly into the water before the weapons of Charles' soldiers! No wonder that the converts had a strange idea of the Religion of Peace! Yet Charles did more than this. He ordered conquered tribes to build churches, and sent priests and monks to live among them. Thus as years passed they were gradually taught what Christianity means.

As Charles' power grew it seemed more and more as if the good old days of the Roman Empire were coming back again. So when Charles chanced, on one Christmas Day, to be in the city of Rome, an inspiring thing happened. As Charles was kneeling before the altar of the great church, the pope, clad in the stately garments of his office, approached, bearing a crown. This he placed upon the head of the Frankish king and in solemn tones declared him Emperor of Rome. (800 A.D.) Then all the people shouted, "Long life and victory to the mighty Charles, the great and pacific emperor



CHARLES THE GREAT INFILCTING BAPTISM  
UPON THE SAXONS

*After a picture by A. de Neuville in  
Guizot's "History of France"*

of the Romans, crowned of God!" And outside the church the rugged soldiers of the king took up the cry.



THE POPE CROWNS CHARLEMAGNE

*From the fresco (19th cent.) in Hotel de Ville, Aix-la-Chapelle, designed by Rethel, executed by Kehren*

sons were not equal to the task. The latter even divided the empire among themselves, and then fought fiercely with one another. They could not understand what Charles had tried to do.

A few of Charles' schools remained; the monks still studied and labored; but Europe went back into confusion and bloodshed. To make things still worse, a new and terrible danger appeared. This was the Northmen.

Not all the Teutonic tribes had yet been Christianized. Far to the north in Scandinavia, in the countries we now call Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, still lived thousands of tall, blond warriors who worshiped Odin and Thor and followed the fierce customs of their ancestors. Cut off by the sea from the rest of Europe, these Northmen had scarcely been heard of.

### 63. The Coming of the Northmen.

But the good order and peace of the Roman Empire had not come back to stay. While Charles the Great lived all went well, but only a mighty ruler could govern all the different races and peoples he had conquered.

His son and grand-

But since they lived by the sea, those hardy people naturally became sailors, and launching forth in their swift black vessels they began to venture upon long voyages. The leaders of these expeditions were called "Vikings" because they were lords of the "Viks," or long, narrow bays of the rugged northern coast.

Though the ships of the Vikings were only open boats driven by oar as well as by sail, they were such bold sailors and were so strong and hardy that they often dared to make voyages thousands of miles from home. The Vikings did not fear the fiercest tempests, and loved danger and adventure as be-fitting brave men.

But the poor coast people of France and England were indeed terrified as they saw the Viking ships approach. Trembling, they looked upon the black raven painted upon their sails, the prows rudely hewn into the forms of dragons, the rows of glittering shields hung along the bulwarks, and the crowd of strong fighting men eager for booty. For the Northmen were pirates.

Sailing up some stream or bay, they would land and, leaving a guard at the boats, scurry off across the country.

Woe betide the region to which they came, for they left behind only smoking ruins. Everything of value they



A NORSE VIKING

carried off to their ships, and those who opposed them they slew. Particularly cruel were they to the monks, for they hated Christianity.



ROLLO AND HIS MEN PLUNDERING A TOWN

France suffered dreadfully. France suffered dreadfully. Finally a great band led by a gigantic chief named Rollo forced a weak descendant of Charles the Great to give over to them a whole district of the finest part of northern France.

This surrender seemed a terrible misfortune; but in the long run it did not prove so. These Northmen now settled down in the region they had conquered. Gradually they gave up their fierce customs. They married the women of the country and learned to speak French instead of their rude northern tongue. In the

Vainly did kings and rulers try to withstand them. But before they could gather their armies the Northmen were gone, and if by any chance these pirates were cornered they were so strong and fought so fiercely that they often cut down many times their own numbers. Villages, churches, monasteries, and even cities disappeared in flame and smoke. Whole districts were ruined.

end they became practically Frenchmen. Yet even among the French they were always noted for their courage in war, their energy, and their love of adventure. So Normandy, as their province was called, instead of being ruined forever became one of the most prosperous parts of all France. We shall see the Normans again, doing great things in England and elsewhere.

But not all the Vikings sailed southward. Others went on plundering expeditions to Scotland and Ireland, and finally a hardy band, buffeting the great billows of the Atlantic in their small open boats, reached distant Iceland. Here many Northmen settled. In time these skillful sailors reached ice-bound Greenland also, and some of them dwelt there.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. Though the Middle Ages was a time of darkness and bloodshed, the Teutons gradually became civilized. 2. This result was due mainly to the Christian church. 3. Among those who helped to win the barbarians to Christianity, especial credit belongs to Gregory the Great and to St. Boniface. 4. The world owes much to the monks of this period. 5. The monasteries were practically the only schools, libraries, hospitals, and inns. 6. Charles the Great, ruler of the Franks, revived learning and spread Christianity. 7. As a reward he was crowned Emperor of Rome by the pope. 8. When Charles died his empire was broken up and Europe fell back into confusion. 9. Conditions were made much worse by the attacks of the Northmen.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why did the overthrow of the Roman government increase the power of the church? 2. How did the Teutons feel when they saw Christian priests and missionaries? 3. Tell the story of the conversion of Clovis. 4. Tell the story of the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons. 5. Who was St. Boniface? 6. Why is he called one of the bravest of Christian missionaries? 7. Who were the monks? 8. Why did

people wish to be monks? 9. What did monks do? 10. Describe a flourishing monastery of the Middle Ages. 11. What have the monks left us that is valuable? 12. Tell something of the early history of the Franks. 13. What kind of a man was Charles the Great? 14. What countries did he conquer? 15. How did Charles show his love for learning? 16. How did he help to spread Christianity? 17. Tell the story of Charles' coronation as emperor. 18. What were the results of Charles' death? 19. What kind of people were the Northmen? 20. Give an account of one of their raids as if you had seen it. 21. Why was it so hard to drive the Northmen away? 22. Tell the story of their settlement in Normandy. 23. Tell the story of their voyages to the Atlantic.

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *European Hero Stories*, 38-53, 81-86, 94-98, and *England's Story*, 17-24; Harding, *The Story of the Middle Ages*; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of England*, and *Young Folks' History of France*, 61-106; Einhard, *Life of Charlemagne*; Haaren and Poland, *Famous Men of the Middle Ages*; Hall, *Viking Tales*; Mabie, *Norse Stories*.

## HOW ENGLAND WAS MADE

**64. Alfred the Great Withstands the Danes.** The country of Europe which suffered most from the Northmen was England. It was right in the path of these savage sea-rovers, and offered an easy prey. The Anglo-Saxons who had formerly conquered the country were not all at first subject to one ruler. On the contrary, they had founded numerous little kingdoms which engaged in constant warfare with each other and with the Britons. Because seven of these little states were especially important, this far-away time of bloodshed and confusion has sometimes been called the period of the Saxon "Heptarchy," or seven kingdoms.

Not until after more than two centuries of savage conflict was the whole country brought under control

of one king. But finally Egbert, originally ruler only of the little state of Wessex, conquered all his rivals and made himself first king of all England. Before the new nation could grow really strong, however, the Northmen appeared with their long ships and shining weapons. Since most of the Vikings who attacked that country were from Denmark, the English usually called them "the Danes." That they did not destroy the English utterly was due partly to a wise and strong king named Alfred.



*The period of the Heptarchy was between the coming of the Anglo-Saxons in 449 and the union of the kingdoms under Egbert in 828*

To this day Englishmen love the stories which have come down regarding him, for he was good and clever, as well as brave. Even when he was a little fair-haired prince Alfred loved learning, but to his great sorrow he could have no good teachers, for the Danes had destroyed nearly all the monasteries. Yet he learned all he could,

and when his mother offered a beautiful book of poems as a prize to the one of her children who could first recite them, Alfred, though he was the youngest prince, easily won. He learned also to play well on musical instruments, and, since all his life he loved to read and to think, he finally became an excellent scholar.

When he grew up Alfred helped his elder brother, who had now become king, to fight the cruel Danes. Again and again they struggled bravely in battle, but they were often beaten. When the brother died and Alfred became king (871 A.D.), the Danes were masters of the

whole country and Alfred had to take refuge in the woods and swamps. Another man might have fled from the land, but Alfred, with true English pluck, would not give up the struggle.

Some amusing stories are told of Alfred at this time. One tells how the king once took refuge in the hut of a poor peasant. The peasant woman, who of course did not know him, set him to watch the cakes she was cooking. But Alfred, busy repairing his trusty



ALFRED AND HIS MEN DEFEATING  
THE DANES

weapons, forgot all about the cakes and soon she smelled them burning. Whereupon the peasant's wife scolded

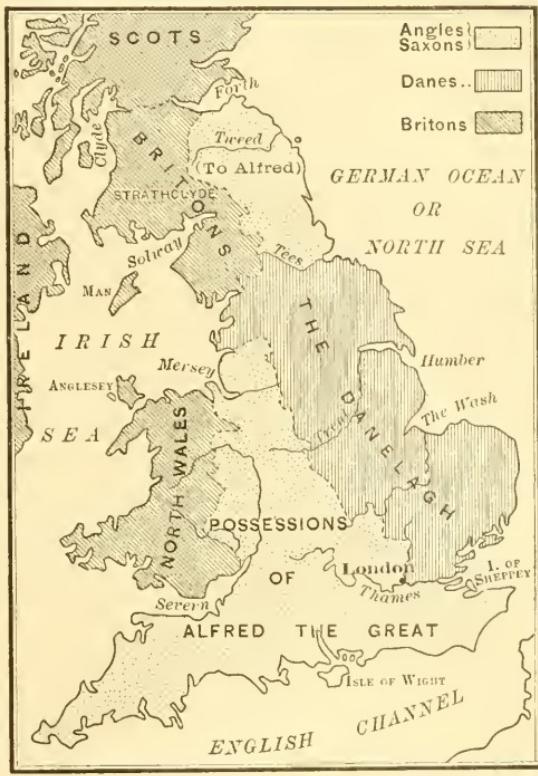
the great king soundly, telling him that though he would not mind the cakes he was ready to eat them fast enough.

Another story tells how Alfred, disguised as a wandering musician, went boldly into the camp of the Danes and amused them by playing on his harp, while he saw how their fortifications were built.

At last Alfred's time came. Raising aloft the old banner of his people, with its figure of the white horse, he summoned all true Englishmen to his side. Over-

joyed to see their king, whom many had thought dead, they eagerly rallied about him. Speedily they marched against the Vikings, and before the fury of their attack the hitherto unconquered Danes gave way. They fled to their fortified camp, but Alfred besieged it and starved them into surrender.

The Danes had to acknowledge Alfred as their over-lord and be baptized Christians. He allowed them to



THE DANELAGH (OR DANELAW)

settle peaceably in the northern part of England, but there was to be no more plundering or bloodshed. Because it was occupied by the Danes this region was known at that time as the Danelagh, and many of its present people are descended from the Vikings.

In spite of this victory England was not yet secure. Later other Viking armies came. But Alfred got the better of them all. This wise king saw that the proper thing to do was to fight the Danes on the sea, for if they once landed in England they would do great harm, even though beaten in the end. So he had war vessels built, and sometimes conquered them in naval battles. Even to this day, when England is so proud of her great fleet of battleships, Englishmen like to remember that it was Alfred who built their first navy.

**65. Alfred's Works of Peace.** Alfred is remembered for many other reasons than because he was a great soldier. When peace came he thought again of schools and education. Because he had had so much trouble himself to learn, he wanted to make things easier for others, so like Charles the Great he invited scholars to come to England and had schools established. He did even more. Up to that time men had thought that all books should be in Latin, since it was the language of Rome. But Alfred held that English, too, was a noble tongue, and he felt that even those who did not understand Latin should know as much as possible. So he encouraged the writing of books in English, and himself helped to translate writings from Latin into his own language.

Alfred not only ruled kindly and justly but revised the laws of the kingdom and made them much better.

He was interested in all that went on, and even sent two bold sea captains to make new discoveries in geography.

But Alfred is remembered most of all because he was a good man. He never willingly injured even his meanest subject; he always thought of the good of his people before his own advantage; he labored constantly that England might be happy. No wonder that even one thousand years after his death the grateful English people set up to his memory a beautiful statue. It stands in Winchester, his ancient capital city, and represents the brave old king, sword in hand, just as he led his faithful people in their struggle for freedom. What George Washington is to us Americans, Alfred the Great is to our English cousins.

After Alfred was gone, the Danes came again and brought new destruction. They even conquered England and ruled it for a short time. But in the end the English got back the power and reestablished their own kings.

**66. The Normans Conquer England.** Thus England had in turn been conquered by the Romans, the Anglo-Saxons, and the Danes. Each had brought with them many new things.

Though the Romans were the most civilized, they had, owing to circumstances, left little to tell of their visit,—only here and there a crumbling wall, or a ruined



STATUE OF ALFRED  
AT WINCHESTER

building. The Anglo-Saxons had given England most. They had brought their race to people the country in place of the Britons, their language to be the beginning of our modern English, and their free German notions about how



From the Bayeux tapestry, Bayeux, France  
NORMAN KNIGHTS ON HORSEBACK

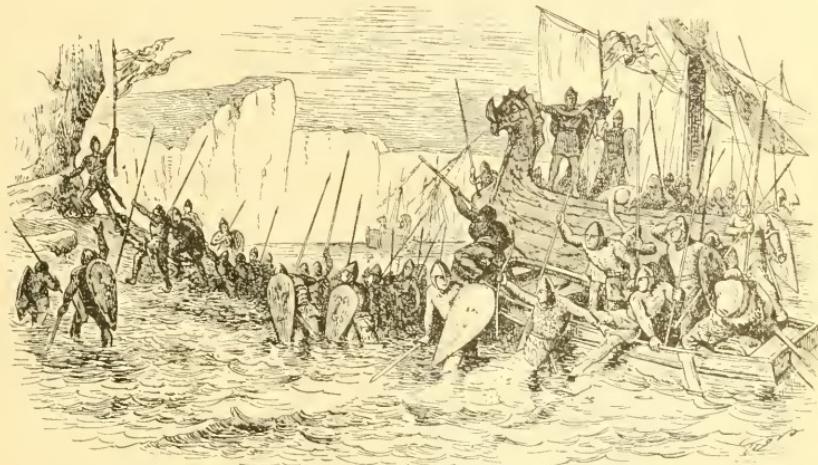
people should choose their king and govern themselves. The Danes had not ruled long, yet many Danes settled in northern England. They intermarried with the English and made the race still more sturdy and warlike. But before England could become the modern country which we know she had to be conquered yet again.

We have seen how it was that the Normans came to live in northern France. Here they soon learned French civilization and French customs, but they remained a restless, energetic people, always looking for some new exploit. Normandy was just across the British Channel from England, and the Normans knew how weak the country still was.

When one of the English kings died without a son, the leading men of England chose Harold, a powerful noble, to be their ruler. But William, Duke of Normandy, whom men have always called William the Conqueror, declared the late king had promised him the throne. He gathered an army of adventurous Normans, and sailing across the channel, just as Julius Caesar had done so long before, landed near Hastings (1066 A.D.).

Here was fought a famous battle. The Normans

had many advantages over the English. They understood how to fight on horseback and how to make skillful use of archery. Moreover, they had William to lead them. Yet all day long the English stood stubbornly together on a hilltop and beat back every attack with their swords and axes. At last William made use of a trick. He had his men pretend to retreat. Harold had been wounded, and there was no one to direct the English. They



After picture by A. de Neuville in Guizot's *History of France*

THE LANDING OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR AT SENLAC NEAR HASTINGS

foolishly broke their ranks and rushed in wild disorder after their enemies. Then, at a signal from William, the Normans wheeled about and rode down their scattered foes. When night came the English army was destroyed, and Harold lay dead upon the field. All England speedily submitted to William.

William richly rewarded his followers. He made many of them nobles, and gave them great estates in the conquered country. Here they built castles and lorded it

over the Anglo-Saxons. Though the latter often rose in rebellion, they could never get rid of William and his descendants. The Normans had come to England to stay and to rule.

In spite of the cruelty which they sometimes practiced, the Norman conquest was really a good thing for England. The Normans knew more than the English. They brought with them from France architects and masons who knew how to build stone churches and castles to take the place of the old wooden buildings of the Anglo-Saxons. Their merchants traded back and forth with France and other parts of Europe. Moreover, the Normans were more lively and quick-witted than the

slow, plodding English. Thus when, in the course of years, the two nations merged into one, the new English people were brighter and more clever than the old Anglo-Saxons.

The Normans brought into England a new language also, for they spoke a kind of French. This fact for a long while kept the two peoples apart. But gradually the descendants of the Normans



THE CATHEDRAL OF ST. CUTHBERT AT DURHAM

*A fine example of the Norman style of architecture*

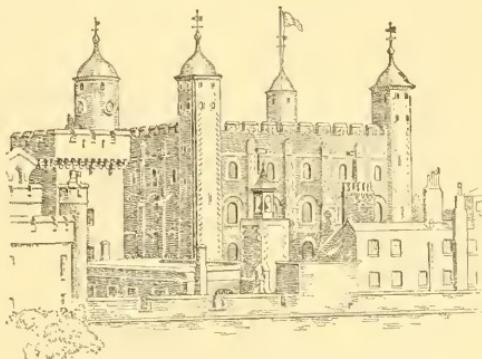
learned to speak like the other people of the country, and the Anglo-Saxons began to use a great many

Norman words. The new language made in this way is the English which we speak. It is very different from the old tongue spoken by Alfred the Great, or by Harold.

The Normans were so restless that even after the Conquest they wanted to keep on fighting. But William was a stern man who knew how to keep his unruly people in order.

The Conqueror was of moderate height only, but very heavily built and so strong of arm that no man could draw his bow. He was dignified in manner, but his appearance was marred by his stoutness, for as he grew older he became fatter and fatter. William's countenance was fierce. Though to good men he was mild and just, his temper was so terrible that when he was aroused no one dared oppose him. Those who tried to withstand him, he punished with awful cruelty.

In most respects William was a good king. He tried to rule justly, and in his time no man dared slay another or do him wrong. But the king had great faults. Money he loved so much that he sometimes did wicked things to gain it, and he was so fond of hunting that he laid waste a whole district of the country that his deer and other game might not be disturbed. A quaint old writer said of William, "As greatly did he love the tall deer as if he were their father."



A NORMAN CASTLE

*This is the White Tower, the famous Keep of the Tower of London, built in 1078*

**67. How Henry II Kept Order in England.** When William was gone, England had cause for sorrow. His sons could not keep order with the same firmness and strength. When they too died, terrible times came. While the Conqueror's grandson and granddaughter contended for the crown, the fierce Norman nobles did as they pleased. Riding forth from the strong castles which they had built, they robbed and murdered the people. It seemed almost as if the dreadful days of the Danes had come again.

But when England was almost ruined, Henry II, great-grandson of the old Norman, became king. He was the right man for the times. Stockily built, with florid face, red hair, bull neck, and bow legs, Henry was not handsome. His eyes, always shifting from one thing to another, showed how restless and active was his mind. He cared little for dress, but loved work, never being happier than when actively carrying out some new plan. Though Henry could fight well he did not love war, but preferred to gain his purposes by other means. To have his way he would stoop to any trick. Yet if Henry was not noble in appearance and character, still he was one of England's greatest kings. Better than any one of his day he saw what England needed, and knew how to bring order and justice to his country.

First he put down the Norman barons with a strong hand. He destroyed their castles and sent away the soldiers they had hired. Then England had peace.

Among any people it is of great importance how wrongdoers are found out, brought to trial, and punished. To Henry it seemed that great improvements could be made in the methods employed in England.

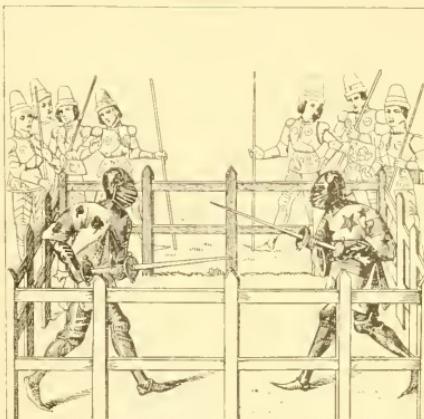
Very childish indeed were the methods men used in those rough days. If a man were accused of a crime, he must bring all the people he could to swear he was innocent. If he could not bring enough to satisfy the court he must stand what was called the "ordeal."

There were many kinds of ordeals. Sometimes the accused man must plunge his arm into a kettle of boiling water and take out a ring.

Then his arm was tied up and if, after three days, it was seen to be healing, he was declared innocent. If the wound was inflamed he was held guilty. Another ordeal was that of cold water. The accused person was bound hand and foot and cast into a pond. If he floated, his guilt was regarded as proved; if he sank, he was drawn out as innocent.

Another form was to build two great fires and make the person on trial run between them. He proved the charge false by escaping with his life. A very simple ordeal was sometimes used when it was said a person had told a falsehood. He was made to swallow a huge piece of bread and cheese. If it stuck in his throat the lie was proved.

But the fierce Norman nobles loved best "trial by battle." Accuser and accused were given equal weapons and, while the judges stood by to see fair play, fought



From a 15th cent. MS.; after Lacroix  
THE ORDEAL OF TRIAL BY COMBAT

out their quarrel foot to foot and eye to eye. Priests, women, and others who could not fight were allowed to choose "champions" to do battle for them. The defeated party was declared guilty, and if he was not slain in the combat, was punished.

Men thought that God would protect the innocent and give them strength to conquer their adversaries. But we can see now that the ordeals were cruel and often unjust. Only very ignorant people could believe in them.

Henry II improved methods greatly. He sent his royal judges to travel about England and hold court in all the chief cities. When the royal judge arrived, sixteen worthy men of the place were chosen, who gave him the names of any persons whom they believed had broken the law. These sixteen were called the "Grand Jury." Those whom they "indicted" were arrested and brought before the judge to be tried.

The king did not indeed forbid ordeals, in which everybody believed, but he sometimes allowed another kind of trial. Twelve other men of the neighborhood were then chosen to examine into all the facts and decide whether the accused man had done wrong or not. Wise people soon found "trial by jury" much better than the old way.

The courts in England and America now generally use trial by jury. We should think it very wicked to let some bad man escape punishment simply because he was strong and a good fighter. All thoughtful people are grateful to wise old Henry II because he did so much to give us better ways of securing justice.

But not all the people of England liked so strong a

king. The great officers of the church especially felt that they ought not to be tried, like other people, before the royal judges. Chief among them was the great Archbishop of Canterbury, Thomas à Becket, the highest officer in all the Church of England. So angry did Henry become with him that one day he said in fury that he wished some one would rid him of this insolent



CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL

*This cathedral was begun in the twelfth century and completed in the two following centuries. It stands near the site of the first Christian church built in Saxon England*

man. Four of his soldiers, hearing his words, leaped upon their horses and galloped off in a cloud of dust to Canterbury. They found Becket before one of the altars of his church, and cut him down with their great swords.

How bitterly did Henry regret what he had said in anger! To show his sorrow he went to Canterbury, knelt before the tomb of the archbishop, and had men

beat him on the bare back. Too late he saw that even a great king, carried off by passion, can do a terrible wrong.

**68. King John and Magna Carta.** Though they sometimes made mistakes, William the Conqueror and Henry II were good kings and usually tried to be just. But England sometimes had wicked rulers. King John, a son of Henry II, was the worst.

Though fierce, he was also cowardly, and he would never keep a promise. Worst of all, he was a tyrant who cared nothing for the good of his people.

When a young man he fought against his father and



KING JOHN RECEIVING FORMAL NOTICE OF  
HIS EXCOMMUNICATIION FROM  
THE CHURCH

helped to bring poor old Henry to a sorrowful death. Then he played traitor to his elder brother, the famous King Richard of the Lion Heart. When John had at last become king he caused his own nephew to be shamefully slain.

From the days of William the Conqueror every king of England had also been ruler of Normandy in France. But John had a war with the King of France, was disgracefully defeated, and lost all his possessions in that country.

When the pope named the wise and brave Stephen Langdon to be Archbishop of Canterbury, John, who

wanted to rob the churches, swore in fury that he should never enter the country. In reply the pope closed every church in England. No bells rang to call the people to prayer or to service on the Sabbath. No priest could preach. The dead could not be buried; the living might not marry. Every church stood silent, and grass grew about the doors.

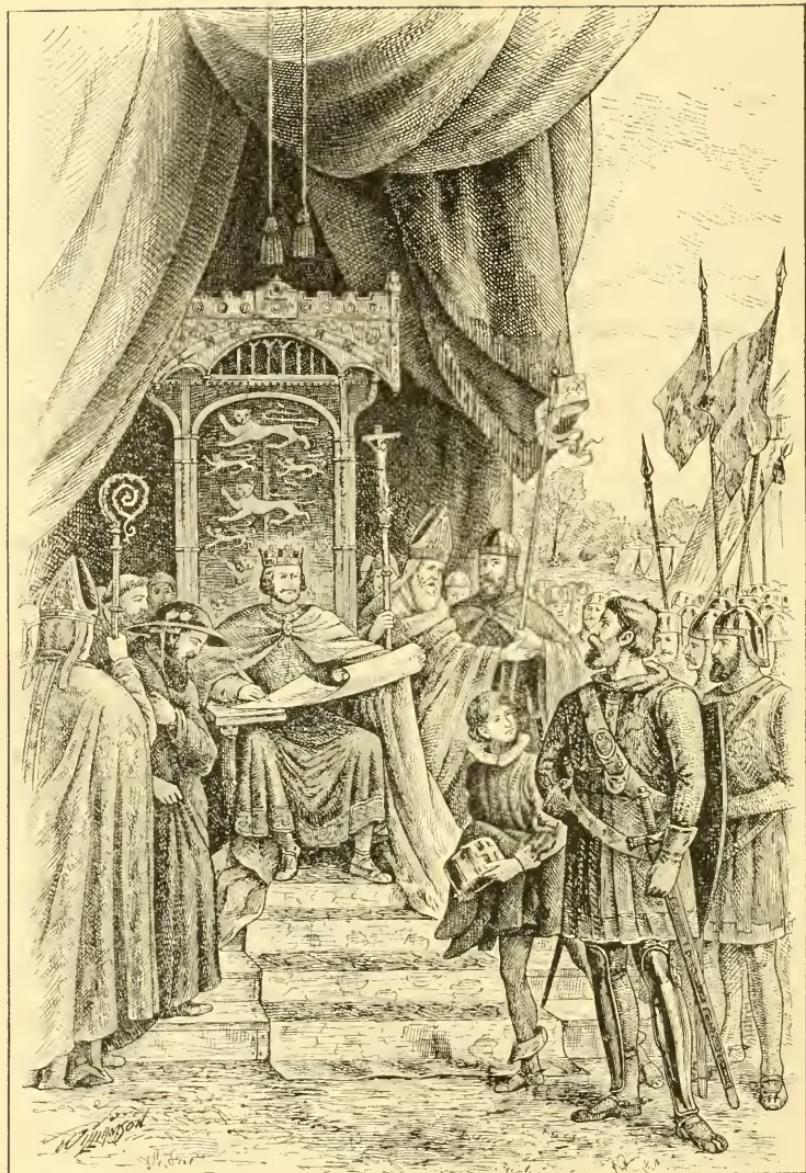
People cried out against the king, but John only laughed. Yet when the pope declared that John was no longer king, and called upon the ruler of France to take his place, John, terrified, gave in and weakly begged the pope for mercy. He agreed to be his subject, and to send him every year a large sum of money. Such conduct was shameful.

Most cruel was John to his own subjects. He let them be wrongfully imprisoned and took their money contrary to law. At last the barons and people could stand it no longer. They remembered that their forefathers had been free men and had had rights.

So they demanded that John should not act against the old customs of England. When he paid no attention they gathered an army and marched against him. Their leader was the sturdy Stephen Langdon who, though an archbishop, felt that it was his duty to fight for the right.

Few would take up arms for the king, and he was helpless. On a meadow called Runnymede beside the Thames River, "where the rushes grow green," John met his rebellious subjects.

Here took place a remarkable scene. Round about on the green turf stood the barons, with the great archbishop at their head. Their faces were grim and determined. Swords and spears were in their hands, and the



light gleamed from their clanking armor. Above waved the banners which they had carried in many a battle. Before them was the cruel king, clad in his royal robes but trying hard to conceal his rage and fear.

Sternly the barons told John that he must sign a great document or charter in which they had written down all the rights belonging to the people of England. There was no way out. John wrote his name at the bottom, and put on his royal seal. Then in turn the archbishop and all the great barons signed and attached their seals. (1215 A.D.)

No wonder that Englishmen love "Magna Carta," the Great Charter. It proved that they were free. It says that no one shall be imprisoned without proper trial, and that no money shall be taken unless with the consent of the Great Council of the kingdom. There in black and white are set down all the other liberties of the English people. The great nobles had forced the king to sign it, but they did not forget the other classes. The freedom of the towns and of the merchants was secured, as well as their own.

Though kings have often tried to break this charter, Englishmen and Americans who are their descendants have never forgotten it. Wherever in the whole wide world Englishmen have gone,—in the United States, in the woods of Canada, in the bush of Australia, in the jungle of Africa,—it is still the law.

John was furious over what had happened. When the barons were gone, it is said that in his terrible anger he frothed at the mouth, rolled on the floor, and with his teeth gnashed the rushes which in those days took the place of a carpet. But he could not undo what he had done.

As soon as he had a chance this faithless king tried to break the Great Charter, but he could not make his subjects forget that he had signed it.

The rest of his reign was of course filled with wickedness and confusion. And he came to a pitiful end. While he was crossing a river with his army the tide rose quickly and some of his men were drowned. That night he took a huge supper of peaches and new ale. In the morning John was found dead.

**69. How Parliament Grew.** Magna Carta did a great deal to keep the English king from acting unjustly to his subjects. But something more was needed before the people themselves could have much share in making the laws.

In England to-day the body of men who make the laws is called Parliament. Parliament is very old, but it was not always called by that name. When the forefathers of the English, the Anglo-Saxons, still lived in the forests of Germany, all the warriors of a tribe used to meet in council to talk over and decide matters. This "folk-moot" was really the beginning of Parliament, and the first Parliament House was no doubt only an open place in the forest where the tall warriors assembled and, amid the clashing of weapons, shouted out their consent or disapproval of the proposals of the chiefs.

Later, when the Anglo-Saxons had conquered England, they still had such meetings. But now it was no longer possible for all the warriors to assemble in one place. So the king summoned only some of the most powerful and wise men. Thus the old "folk-moot" changed into the "Witan," or "Council of the Wise Men," and the king was not supposed to take any important step without asking their advice.

Though William the Conqueror was a Norman and also a man who always liked to do as he pleased, he had still tried to keep as many of the old English customs as he could. He knew it would be easier to rule the conquered Anglo-Saxons if he did it in the ways to which they were accustomed. So when any great thing was to be done, he still summoned leading men to meet with him in council. Thither came the heads of the church, the great archbishops and bishops in their priestly robes, as well as the powerful nobles or barons to whom he had given great estates. The Normans called such meetings at first the "Great Council," and later "Parliament."

Even the great barons did not as yet often venture to oppose the will of strong kings like the Conqueror and Henry II. But we have seen how they dared to withstand King John and how, clad in their suits of mail, and with their swords in their hands, they had met him at Runnymede and forced him to grant the Great Charter. Among many other things the Charter said that the king must not take his subjects' money except by the consent of the Great Council. When he wanted to collect heavier taxes, he must call Parliament.

This was an important gain for England. But Parliament was still made up only of the nobles and great officers of the church. Ordinary citizens had no share in it.

A great change was at hand, however. The son of John, King Henry III, proved to be not much better than his father. He was indeed not so fierce and cruel, but he wanted his own way and would not rule wisely. He spent money foolishly, and liked foreigners better than Englishmen. To some worthless foreign favorites

he gave high offices and great estates. Worse than all, King Henry would not remember his promises or keep the Great Charter.

But the English barons remembered how they had curbed King John. Led by a strong and brave man, Earl Simon de Montfort, they rebelled. Of this true hero we do not know much, save that he had been born in France and had come to England after his marriage with a rich English lady. But though England was only his adopted country, he was a true Englishman in spirit and was wise and good. Earl Simon and his barons overthrew and captured the king in a battle.

Since King Henry was in his hands, the earl became for a time the real ruler. Soon Simon called a Parliament. But it was a Parliament of a new kind, for he summoned



EARL SIMON DE MONTFORT  
From an engraving after the painting  
by C. Jacquand

not merely the great lords but also men who were to speak and act for the people. From each county in England, and from each city, two men were chosen to come to Parliament as representatives of the "commons," or persons who were not barons or bishops. To gain a voice in Parliament meant as much for the people of England as to gain Magna Carta itself. No wonder that Earl Simon is counted among the great men of English history. (1265 A.D.)

But it was not yet certain that Parliament would remain as Simon had arranged it. King Henry was

indeed too weak to struggle with the great earl, but his son, Prince Edward, was a brave soldier and a good general. When the war between the king and the barons began again, Prince Edward led the royal army with great skill. Many of de Montfort's men deserted him, and he was finally forced to give battle to the prince when certain to be beaten. Fighting to the last, "in a crashing forest of the foe," the brave old earl fell, and all his bravest friends fell around him.

But though Simon de Montfort died his work lived. When Prince Edward became King Edward I he proved as good a ruler as he was soldier. Instead of driving the "commons" from Parliament, he saw that it was best to keep them there. He was wise enough to feel that he could rule England more easily with the approval of the people than against their wishes.

So it came about that Parliament had two "houses," —the House of Lords, where the nobles sat, and the House of Commons, where met the representatives of the people. For a law to be passed both houses had to agree. Though many hard struggles still lay before England, she was happy indeed, compared with other nations, to have received so good a form of government.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. England was almost ruined by the Danes. 2. Alfred the Great defeated them and saved his country. 3. He also encouraged learning and the establishment of schools. 4. Later England was conquered by the Normans, led by William the Conqueror. 5. Many Normans came to live in England and brought new ideas. 6. The Norman nobles were fierce fighters and often would not obey the king. 7. Henry II restored order. 8. He established better courts and methods of trial. 9. King John was a tyrant

and oppressed his people. 10. He was forced to sign Magna Carta. 11. Simon de Montfort and King Edward I established the House of Commons. 12. Thus the English people had a share in their own government.

**Study Questions.** 1. What was there about the position of England which caused the Northmen to go there? 2. Tell about the youth of Alfred the Great. 3. Why did the English fight bravely under his leadership? 4. Why was it a bold thing to try to fight the Danes on the sea? 5. Make a list of the ways in which Alfred tried to benefit England. 6. How did he resemble George Washington? 7. Name the conquests of England, and give at least one result of each. 8. Who were the Normans? 9. Why did they invade England? 10. How did William the Conqueror show that he was a good general? 11. How did the Normans improve England? 12. What was their chief fault? 13. What kind of man was King William the Conqueror? 14. Why did England regret his death? 15. In what way was Henry II like William, and how was he different? 16. Why does it make a great difference in any country how trials are carried on? 17. Tell about the "ordeals." 18. Explain how Henry improved matters. 19. Why did Archbishop à Becket oppose the king? 20. Tell the story of his death. 21. Make a list of tyrannical acts of King John. 22. Tell the story of Magna Carta as if you had been one of the barons. 23. What differences does the signing of Magna Carta make to Americans? 24. Explain how Parliament grew in such a way as to show the different forms it took. 25. Why were Englishmen not satisfied with King Henry III? 26. Who was Earl Simon de Montfort? 27. Tell what he did for England. 28. Why did Edward I keep the House of Commons? 29. What do we Americans call our Parliament?

**Suggested Readings.** Mowry, *First Steps in the History of England*, 38-48, 49-70, 82-97; Tappan, *England's Story*, 24-93; Blaisdell, *Stories from English History*, 27-77; Dickens, *A Child's History of England* (Scribners, N.Y., 1910), 18-24, 50-63, 89-110, 122-168; Guerber, *The Story of the English*, 42-53, 73-84, 117-128; Church, *Stories from English History*, 114-142, 146-165, 187-202; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of England*. Also: Tappan, *In the Days of Alfred the Great* and *In the Days of William the Conqueror*.

## THE NOBLES OF THE MIDDLE AGES

**70. Classes of People in the Middle Ages.** In the Middle Ages people lived very different lives from those which we lead to-day. Now we have many different occupations, and a man may be a farmer, a merchant, a lawyer, or follow any one of countless trades or kinds of business just as he sees fit. One who does not like the quiet life of the country may move to some town or bustling city and enter any trade he prefers. We think it scarcely honorable now for a person, even if he has a large fortune, not to engage in some useful work.

But in the Middle Ages it was not so. During the earlier part of that time there were no towns or cities, and everybody lived in the country in much the same way. Later, towns and cities began to grow, but they were always small as compared with those we know to-day.

All the people who lived in the country—that is to say, nearly everybody—belonged to one of three great social classes. There were the clergy, such as the bishops, priests, and monks who carried on the work of the church; the peasants, who tilled the fields and did all the useful labor; and the nobles, whose business it was to fight and to rule over the peasants, but who often spent



A YOUNG SQUIRE, A FRIAR  
ON A JOURNEY. (*From the  
Ellesmere MS.*); PEASANTS  
BREAKING CLODS. (*From  
an early 14th Century  
Psalter*)

much of their time in doing nothing at all that was useful.

Whether a man was peasant or noble depended on his birth, for though a peasant might possibly rise to a noble position, this hardly ever happened. A man of any class might, of course, join the clergy. A peasant could do so, however, only with the consent of the noble on whose land he lived.

**71. How the Nobles Lived.** The nobles of the Middle Ages were fierce and proud people. They had high-sounding titles, such as Duke, Count, or Baron, which their ancestors had received from the king in return for services they had done on the battlefield or in council. All the land which did not belong to the church they owned, and they looked down on the poor laboring peasants who lived on their estates as hardly better than cattle. Not all of them indeed were cruel or wicked, but they believed that their "gentle blood" made them far superior to other people.

The chief business of the nobles was war, and their amusements were warlike games and hunting. They lived in great fortified buildings called castles, generally set on some steep hill so that the enemy could not easily reach them. In early times the castles were only "stockades" of logs, but later they were made of stone and, as men learned more and more about building, they came to be great structures with massive walls, huge towers, and frowning battlements. A ditch filled with water which could be crossed only by a drawbridge gave still further protection.

Since gunpowder was not known in the Middle Ages, it was very seldom that a castle could be captured by an enemy except after a long siege. Behind the walls of

his strong castle a great noble sometimes defied even the king himself. So massive were these buildings, that after all these centuries their ruins are still to be seen everywhere in Europe.

But though the castles were good forts they would seem to us dreadful places in which to live. Since the walls were so thick and the windows only slits for shooting arrows, the rooms were usually small and dark. Though in the "great hall" there might be a huge fireplace and a roaring fire of logs, most of the castle was cold and uncomfortable. There was little furniture, and the floors were strewn with rushes in place of carpets. Doubtless the family and "men-at-arms" spent much time in the courts, or "wards," as the open spaces inside the walls were called. Yet only strong men and women, used to cold and discomfort, could live in such places.

Hard indeed must have been the lot of the ladies in these castles, for they could have little share in the exciting occupations of the men. For them there were no books in the Middle Ages, and nothing to learn save to play some musical instrument or to weave the quaint tapestry which sometimes adorned the grim stone walls of the cheerless rooms. What a bright day it must have seemed



TROUBADOURS WITH HARP AND LUTE

when some wandering minstrel visited the castle to play and sing, or when some juggler came to amuse them by his tricks!

But though boys of noble birth were seldom taught even to read, they had much to learn, for every noble must be a soldier, and the trade of arms in the Middle Ages was hard to master.

**72. Warfare in the Middle Ages.** The noble always fought on horseback and clad in complete armor. At first this armor was made of small metal links, like those of chains, sewed close together on stout cloth. Later men learned how to make better armor of steel plates. This armor was so heavy that it took years of practice before one could bear it easily or fight in it well. Only the strongest horses could carry the armor-clad men, and sometimes when a warrior fell from his horse he could not rise from the ground, and so was easily captured by the enemy.



A KNIGHT ON HORSEBACK

*A survival of the armor of the Middle Ages may be seen to-day in the helmets and cuirasses of certain corps of cavalry*

The heads of the knights were protected by steel caps or helmets, and they carried shields on which were painted the coats of arms of their families. Their chief weapons were the lance, a long stout spear, and the sword, or battle ax.

When the knights fought, each one leveled his lance and charged upon his adversary, seeking to overthrow him by the shock. Any other kind of warfare was difficult for men in such heavy armor.

So well protected, however, were the knights that even in hard battles not many were slain. Indeed, it was thought a more noble deed of arms to capture another knight than to kill him. Then a ransom, that is, a large sum of money, might be asked for his release.

Slings, bows, and other weapons were used in the Middle Ages by soldiers who fought on foot, but they seem to have been of little value against men in armor. One knight on his great war horse was more than a match for many light-armed footmen. It was only toward the end of this time that the sturdy farmers of England learned to use a bow six feet long which shot with such force that with it they could mow down even "noble knights."

**73. Warlike Games of the Nobles; the Tournament.** So eager for war and adventure were the nobles that times of peace seemed dull. Even hunting, of which they were very fond, was not exciting enough. So they had "tournaments." These were simply play-wars in which knights contended, either in single combat or in opposing troops.

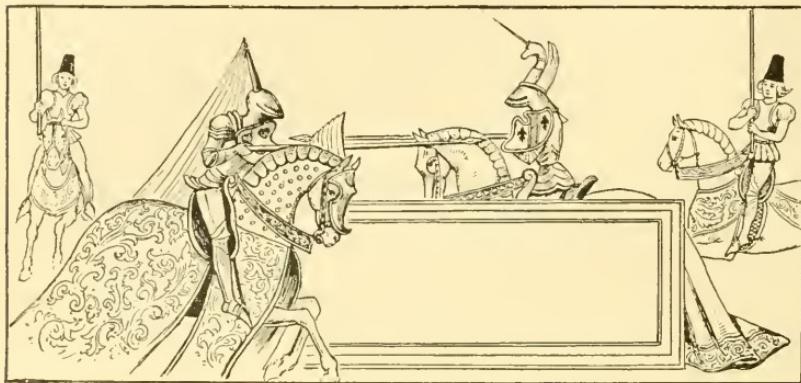
A tournament in the Middle Ages was often a great occasion. Galleries were erected from which the ladies might view the combats and applaud their champions; and high nobles and even kings in splendid costume eagerly attended. The knights in their shining armor, with colored streamers fluttering from their lances, made a gallant picture.



From an old print

ENGLISH ARCHERS AND  
THE "LONGBOW"

Perhaps two renowned champions were to contend. Each, mounted on his strong war horse, took his stand



A TOURNAMENT OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY

at one end of the "lists," as the tournament ground was called. Then, when all was ready, the heralds sounded a blast on their long trumpets and the knights, spurring at each other, met with a mighty crash which often shivered spear and shield, and unhorsed one or perhaps both of the combatants. For the victor was great glory, and whoever held the lists successfully against all comers was crowned with a wreath by the Queen of Beauty, a noble lady whom he himself was allowed to choose.

It was rough play indeed, and fatal accidents often occurred, especially as the knights sometimes fought with sharp weapons as in real war. But many thought life itself a little thing to risk for glory and renown.

**74. What Feudalism Was.** In the United States to-day all men alike are governed by the President and a Congress whom we ourselves elect, but in the Middle Ages such an arrangement was unknown. Every country in Europe had a king or an emperor at its head, but he

generally had little power. Each noble ruled like a little king over the peasants who lived about his castle, and the nobles themselves were joined to each other by an arrangement called "feudalism," which seems very queer to us.

It was the rule that every noble must be the "vassal" of some "lord." When by the death of his father a young man inherited his castle and estate he must visit this lord and go through an interesting ceremony called "homage."

In the great hall of his strong castle the lord seated himself. Then the new vassal, in full armor, knelt before him and swore a solemn oath, with his hands between those of the lord, that he would be faithful in everything that was required of a vassal; that he would love whatever the lord cherished, and hate when he hated. Then the lord kissed the vassal and raised him to his feet. Finally there was put in the vassal's hands a twig or a piece of turf taken from his own estate, and perhaps a vessel of water from one of its streams. This was done to show that the lord now gave the estate to him. Thus the ceremony ended.

It might seem to us a rather mean thing thus to kneel before another more powerful man. But in the Middle Ages homage was thought a ceremony honorable both to the vassal and to the lord. Under feudalism most nobles were, of course, both lords and vassals at the same time,—lords over lesser men and vassals to some still more powerful noble, perhaps to the king himself.

After the homage had been performed, when the lord rode forth to war it was the duty of the vassal to go with him and fight by his side. From time to time, too, he must attend the lord's council or court, and give him his best advice. He must entertain the lord when he

came to visit his castle, and aid him by gifts of money on certain occasions,—as when his eldest daughter was married, when his eldest son became a knight, or when the lord himself was captured by his enemies and his ransom must be paid. Other duties the vassal often had also. Yet the lord could not ask him to do anything he pleased, but only those things which custom required.

In return for this faithful service the lord was bound to protect his vassal from his enemies, to see that he had justice done him, and to look after the education of his children should he die when they were still young. So both the lord and the vassal were thought to profit by the agreement.

Since all the nobles were thus bound by solemn oaths to love each other, one would think that they must have lived together in peace. But such was not the case. These people were fierce and loved war. Many would never do what they had agreed unless compelled by force. Moreover, feudalism often raised puzzling questions, for a powerful duke or count would have many vassals who usually quarreled with each other; and a noble who owned more than one castle sometimes had a different lord for each one.

So war raged nearly all the time. It was not like the wars we have to-day, when one nation fights against another, but rather like the quarrels of one man against his neighbors. Sometimes a vassal attacked his lord because he said he was unjust; often a lord made war on his vassals because they would not do what was required. Powerful neighboring dukes or counts constantly attacked each other or joined to oppose the king. Everywhere

was heard the clash of arms and the clattering of hoofs as the knights rode forth on their expeditions.

But the worst part of it all was that the chief loss usually fell on the helpless peasants. A noble, if he found his enemies too strong, fled to his strong castle, and defied them; but the poor peasants had their houses burned, their crops stolen or destroyed, and were fortunate if they did not starve to death. Is it any wonder, then, that for centuries people in Europe made little progress and had barely enough to eat?

Good kings tried hard to make the restless nobles obey the laws and keep the peace. But the nobles were so strong that for many centuries little could be done except by very powerful rulers, such as Henry II of England, or the celebrated St. Louis, king of France. Only very gradually, and not until almost the end of the Middle Ages, did the power of the king become really supreme, and even then only in certain countries of Europe, not in all.

The pope and the clergy also tried hard to stop the bloodshed which feudalism brought. Though they did not succeed entirely, they often did more than the kings. For example, they made a rule that all wars must stop from Thursday night until Monday morning, as well as



From MS. of Froissart  
SIEGE OF A FEUDAL CASTLE

on the days held sacred to saints. Even most of the fierce feudal nobles were afraid to disobey entirely the orders of the church.



PAGES WAITING ON THEIR LORD AND MISTRESS

taught that every boy of noble birth should strive to be a true "knight" and every girl a "lady."

A true knight was a brave warrior who feared nothing, who was always ready to fight for the poor or the unfortunate, and who would never do a mean or underhand thing. To perform a gallant feat of arms, or to help any one in distress, he would gladly risk any danger and never ask for pay. A true knight must be a good Christian and serve the church. But most of all he was to select some noble lady for whose sake he would win renown and whose smile would be his highest reward. Thus he might wear her glove on his helmet amid the clashing blows of the tournament, and, if he were successful, have the high honor of naming her the Queen of Beauty.

Every noble lady was taught to honor bravery and self-sacrifice, to encourage her true champion to high deeds, and to be courtly and gracious to all.

### **75. Chivalry and Knighthood.**

But fierce as they were, we must not think that the nobles of the Middle Ages did not have some lofty ideas. One of them was "chivalry," which

The ideas of chivalry marked out for each young noble what he was to learn. At about the age of seven his training began. Usually he was sent by his father to the castle of his lord or to that of some other famous knight. Here he became a "page." He waited constantly upon the lord and his wife, and by the ladies of the castle was taught courtly manners and perhaps how to play and sing. But when he grew strong enough for more active tasks, perhaps at fourteen or fifteen, he became a "squire." He now attended more especially upon the lord. He must care for his horses, keep his arms bright, and go with him on his campaigns. Meanwhile, under the direction of his lord, he practiced constantly in the use of arms, learning to ride, to wear the heavy armor, and to wield the lance. The older squires fought beside their lords in battle.

Finally the time came when the squire was ready to be made a knight. The giving of "knighthood" was an impressive ceremony. After bathing and arraying himself in



A LORD BESTOWING KNIGHTHOOD UPON A SQUIRE

the required costume of red, white, and black, the young man was required to watch for a whole night before the altar of a church in which his weapons and armor had been placed. In the morning he attended mass and then, in the presence of all his family, friends, and vassals, advanced to his lord and knelt. The lord drew his sword and with the flat of the blade smote the young man on the shoulder, saying as he did so, "In the name of God, St. Michael, and St. George, I dub thee knight. Be brave and loyal." Then the newly made knight arose joyfully, and leaping upon his horse showed his skill in riding and in the use of his sword and lance. The ceremony ended with a great feast.

The training in chivalry was high and noble, and the world has never forgotten the word or its meaning. We still read with admiration the beautiful stories of knights of old, like the mythical King Arthur and his companions of the Round Table, or the real St. Louis, the brave and blameless king of France. Even to-day, when life is so different, men applaud a knightly deed.

Yet, it must be said sadly, in the Middle Ages there were few true knights. The men who so solemnly received knighthood only too often immediately forgot what it meant and were faithless and cruel. Perhaps even these reckless and quarrelsome barons were better, however, for having thought at least a little of the duty of being brave and loyal.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. In the early part of the Middle Ages all the people were divided into three great classes,—the nobles, the peasants, and the clergy. 2. The nobles ruled over the peasants. 3. They spent their time in fighting and in

war-like amusements. 4. Their dwellings were great castles. 5. These were built as forts and were cold and uncomfortable. 6. The nobles delighted in the play-wars called tournaments. 7. All the nobles were joined together by an arrangement called "feudalism." 8. This did not give peace, but caused continual fighting. 9. The idea called "chivalry" did something to make the nobles better and less savage.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why was it that people during the Middle Ages could not easily change from one occupation to another? 2. Describe a castle. 3. Why would life in a castle seem very uncomfortable to us? 4. What did the ladies do in the castles? 5. What did the boys learn? 6. Tell about the ways of fighting used in the Middle Ages. 7. What were tournaments? 8. Describe a tournament as if you yourself had been one of the spectators. 9. What was "feudalism"? 10. What is meant by "lord" and "vassal"? 11. Tell about the ceremony of homage. 12. Why was there so much fighting in the days of feudalism? 13. How were the wars different from those of our day? 14. What powers did something for peace? 15. What did "chivalry" teach? 16. Tell how a noble boy was trained in the days of chivalry. 17. Had you been a young noble, how would you have received knighthood? 18. How would you have acted afterward?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *When Knights Were Bold*, 1-101, and *European Hero Stories*, 118-124; Harding, *The Story of the Middle Ages*; Retold from "St. Nicholas"; *Stories of the Middle Ages*, 72-86. Also: Lanier, *Boy's King Arthur* (Scribners, N.Y., 1911), 50-95; Stevens and Allen, *King Arthur Stories*; Warren, *King Arthur and His Knights*; Greene and Kirk, *With Spurs of Gold*, 7-85.

## THE PEOPLE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

**76. How the People Lived.** Very different from the life of the warlike nobles was that of the poor peasants. They spent their days in hard work and knew nothing of the fierce excitement of tournament or battlefield.

In the Middle Ages the lands of a baron or knight were called a "manor." In the center of the estate, often on

some steep hill, towered the castle with its turrets and battlements, above which fluttered the lord's banner. But below it clustered the humble dwellings of the peasants. They were only huts, built of mud, with roofs of straw. They had no windows, and a hole in the roof took the place of a chimney. A rude bench or two, a rack for tools, and some straw for a bed often made up all their furniture.

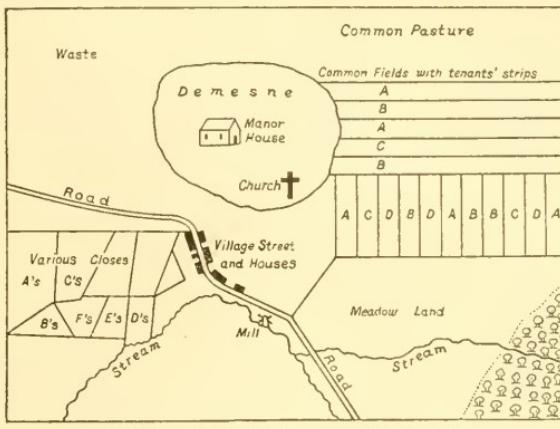
A few among the people might be a little better off, such as the miller, the blacksmith, and the priest. Each peasant village had, of course, its church which was, after the castle, the chief building of the manor. Then there was the mill, the smithy, and perhaps other workshops, if the village were a large one.

Except for a few persons who had special tasks like the smith and the miller, all the peasants worked in the fields. But they were not free to do as they pleased as are our farmers to-day. The peasant of the Middle Ages was a "serf." A serf was not exactly a slave, for his lord could not sell him or even take his land away from him, yet his lot was hard. He was bound to remain always on the manor on which he was born, and if the manor were sold to another noble the serf went with it, just as if he were a tree or a house. No matter how hard conditions might be, he could not leave the land without his lord's consent, unless indeed he ran away and took to the woods as a desperate outlaw or robber.

Usually the serf must work for three days in each week on the lands of the lord. Only on the other days could he till his own little fields. Extra labor for the lord was required too at certain seasons of the year, and besides this the serf must present the lord with eggs, chickens,

or other gifts on occasions like Easter and Christmas.

The serf must have his corn ground at the lord's mill, his bread baked at the lord's oven, and obey all the other rules of the manor. He could not even marry without the lord's consent, or sell his horse unless he gave the lord a part of the price.



*The demesne is the land the lord of the manor kept for himself*

Moreover, his wife and daughter must help with the household work of the castle and in spinning and weaving.

Though all their time was given to agriculture, the poor serfs of that rude day knew little about how crops should be raised when compared with the skillful modern farmer. A visitor to a manor would have seen no neat fields, separated by fences or hedges, in which each man planted the crop he saw fit. Instead, there would have been three or six huge fields in different parts of the manor, each divided into long, narrow strips which were separated only by little ridges of earth. In such a field each serf would have one or more strips. He usually possessed in all somewhere from ten to thirty acres. Much of the labor the serfs did by working together, for none of them owned all the oxen, plows, and other implements required. Each must help the others with such tools as he had.

Every year these poor people had to waste one third of their land, for they did not know how to treat

it with fertilizers so as to keep it producing. In one of their great fields they planted wheat or rye, in the



From an early 14th Century psalter

SERFS OF THE MIDDLE AGES PLOWING

second barley or oats; the third they had to let rest or lie "fallow," while the ground renewed its power. The next year field number one would rest, number two would have the wheat or rye and number three the barley or oats. So a field had the same crop only once in three years. Such a change is called a rotation of crops, but it is very easy to see that the three-field rotation is very simple and wasteful.

Many things which farmers raise to-day were then unknown in Europe. Potatoes, tomatoes, beets, and indeed most of the vegetables which we find so delicious had not yet appeared. Even a lord must live mostly on meat, fish, and bread. Tea and coffee had, of course, not yet come to Europe, and all must drink water, milk, and ale or wine.

The serfs could, however, keep a few animals, such as sheep or hogs, for every manor had its stretch of green common pasture where they might feed. In the forest, too, the serfs were allowed to collect fallen branches for firewood or even to lop off limbs of trees, but the trees themselves they might not cut down.

To us the life of the poor serfs seems miserable. Huddled in their wretched huts filled with the smoke which

would not go out of the hole in the roof, cold in winter and burned by the heat of summer, they seemed hardly better off than animals. Many indeed had only a single garment to wear, a sort of long shirt tied around the waist by a bit of rope for a girdle.

Worst of all, they could not improve. There was no school where the children could learn even to read and write, and had it been possible for them to go to some neighboring monastery to be taught by the monks there would have been no books for them to use when they came away.

As most manors were surrounded by dark forests where lurked bands of fierce outlaws, the serfs seldom saw people from outside. Nearly everything they used or had they must make on their own manor. Perhaps salt and iron were all they purchased from without.

In many cases, however, a great fair was held once a year at some place not too far away. How wonderful it must have seemed to the poor serfs who were able to go to see the curious things offered by merchants who perhaps had come from across the sea, and to watch the jugglers, acrobats, and performing bears which were always features of these meetings. For them the fair was the great event of their whole lives.

And yet the peasants were not always unhappy. If the lord of the manor were unjust and cruel their lot was terrible, but if he were kind and strong enough to protect them they were usually contented. To thousands of them it never occurred that any other sort of life was possible.

For hundreds of years the peasants of Europe lived in very much the same way. There could be little

progress or new knowledge until things began to change.

**77. How the Towns Grew.** But things did change. As the years rolled by some of the villages increased in size. Those under the sheltering care of a monastery had especial advantages. Others were situated on some good harbor of the seacoast, or on some large river where men began to come for commerce. Even a crossroads gave some encouragement to growth.

So some of the little clusters of peasants' cottages gradually grew into towns where markets were held, and these again into cities,—not indeed into such huge centers of population as New York and Chicago are to-day, but yet places of considerable importance.

At first the townspeople were still the serfs of various lords, but they soon began to wish for more freedom than the rules of the manor permitted. Now they demanded a charter, that is, a document signed by the lord, giving them rights to govern their own affairs, at least to some extent. And in the end the lord gave way and granted what they wished.

Sometimes the people rose in fury, attacked the noble's castle, and compelled him to yield. But far more often the citizens of the town, who had now begun to grow rich, paid the lord a large sum of money for the charter. It often seemed to him a good bargain, for he could use the money to hire soldiers and fit out expeditions against other feudal lords whom he hated.

Many of the stronger towns managed to get rid of their lords entirely. Thus they became "free cities," which ruled themselves and had no one above them but the king or emperor. In Germany, especially, there were many free cities.

The cities of the Middle Ages surely did not look very much like those of the United States of to-day. Some of the old towns of Europe still stand much as they were in centuries gone by. The traveler who visits "Sleepy Chester" or York in England, or quaint Nuremberg in Germany, or Carcassonne on its sunny hilltop in southern France, may well feel that he has stepped back into the days of Simon de Montfort or St. Louis. Round such a city ran a high and massive stone wall, provided with battlements and towers. Outside it was a deep ditch



From an old German print

THE WALLED TOWN OF NABBURG (BAVARIA, GERMANY) DURING THE MIDDLE AGES

filled with water. At only a few points were there gates with drawbridges, by which persons could enter the town, and each gate was fortified by an especially strong tower. Defended by its sturdy citizens, a city of this period could not easily be captured even by a strong army.

Since the city had to be built inside of such a wall, it did not usually cover as much ground as cities of our time. The streets were generally narrow and crooked, and though there was nearly always an open market place near the center, it was not likely to be very large. The houses, however, were often several stories in height

and were so built that each story projected a little over the one beneath. Thus in some of the narrow streets the upper stories of the buildings were not very far apart. In some countries the houses had very high roofs and tall chimneys, which would make them look very quaint to us.

Every rich city was sure to have several beautiful churches. But the crowning glory was often a huge "belfry," or bell tower which rose high above all the roofs of the town and where a guard was kept constantly to watch for fire or for the approach of an enemy.

Through the narrow streets of such a city there rushed no stream of automobiles or heavily laden trucks like those we know. Occasionally might have been seen the clumsy cart of some peasant, or a string of packhorses brought by a rich merchant. But even if wagons and carriages were few, the city of the Middle Ages was often a busy place. Especially if it was market day, and the neighboring peasants had come to sell their produce and to purchase in return some of the fine things made in the town, the quaint, narrow streets bustled with life, and the wooden shoes of the peasants made a merry clatter on the cobblestones of the paving.

**78. Industry in the Towns.** How did the people in the towns make their living? By making things which other people wanted to use, and selling them. At first they sold to the peasants who lived round about, but soon they began to trade with other cities and even with distant countries.

The way the people of the towns of the Middle Ages manufactured articles was very different indeed from that used to-day. In those old cities were seen

no great factories or mills with their tall chimneys and noisy machines. People then did not know how to use steam or electricity to turn wheels or drive engines. They made everything by hand, and understood only simple methods. Men worked in their own houses and themselves sold whatever they made.

All the people who were making the same article had to belong to a society called a "guild." Thus there was the "weavers' guild," the "shoemakers' guild," the "goldsmiths' guild," and very many more. No town would let any one make or sell a thing who was not a member of the right guild. And it was not always easy to become a guild member, for these societies did not want very many to engage in their business.

Those who were full members were called "masters." Each master owned one of the tall, quaint houses, where he lived with his family. In this was his shop, where he worked every day with his men. There was also a place where he kept the goods he had to sell, and some of those he hung out so that people passing could see how fine they were and be attracted to stop and buy. All the members of a guild lived on the same street, or at least in the same neighborhood, so if a man wanted to buy a candlestick, a piece of cloth, or a gold chain he knew just where to go.

We think to-day that a man does right to put whatever price on a thing other people are willing to pay. But in the Middle Ages people believed it was wicked to ask much more for anything than it cost to make it. Every guild had strict rules about the prices its members should charge. It had rules, too, about the way in which articles should be made. If any of its members charged

higher prices, or worked in a hurry so that their products were not strong or good, they might be expelled. So in

those old days a man who bought anything might be sure he was getting his "money's worth," but there were few "bargains."



From an old German woodcut

A GUILD MASTER INSTRUCTING JOURNEYMAN AND APPRENTICE

in the master's house and was treated very much as a member of the family. While he learned the business he was subject to the master and might be harshly punished if he was lazy. But he ate at the master's table and talked and played with his master's sons and daughters.

The length of the apprenticeship depended on whether the trade of that guild was hard or easy to learn. It was usually three years. Then the apprentice, now a young man, became a journeyman. He was paid wages and might live at his own home. But he still worked beside the master on the bench, and could not have a shop of his own. The journeyman was satisfied, however, and worked hard and tried to become more skillful, for he now hoped soon to be admitted a master.

Finally, if he was fortunate, he became a full member of the guild. But first he must prove that he was a satisfactory workman by making his "masterpiece," that is to say, the finest article his hands could construct. How hard the young man must have labored to show

that he was worthy to rank with the best of them all!

Once a master, he could have a shop and apprentices, and hire journeymen of his own. In time he might become rich. But he must always obey the rules of the guild and not try to find new and cheap ways of doing things.

The guilds did other things besides making rules about work. They erected fine halls where their meetings were held. In wealthy old cities like London, Paris, or Bruges in Belgium these quaint and beautiful buildings are still regarded by the citizens with pride and admiration. The guilds were charitable societies also. If any member died poor, the guild provided for his widow and children. If any were sick or injured, their expenses were paid. They had festivals, too, in which all the members took part. Sometimes the whole society went to worship together in some great church. In some ways the guild was like a great family.

When we see the great factories of our day, with their huge engines and furnaces, and thousands of toiling men and women, and then think of the old ways of the guild, we wonder sometimes whether, after all, the new way is better. In the Middle Ages the master worked beside his men and knew them all well. Though sometimes the journeymen and apprentices grumbled against the hard rules of the guild, and even "struck," they all knew that in time they also might be masters. The guild members were friends. Now the owner of a great factory seldom knows very many of his workmen, and they know that not one in ten thousand of them will ever own a mill. Many are the great struggles between capital and labor.

Yet now we can all buy for a few cents things that in

the Middle Ages only very wealthy people could own; and clever men are always trying to invent new machines



A CARAVAN OF MEDIEVAL MERCHANTS

and methods to make things cheaper still. Moreover, to-day any man or woman can work at any trade he wishes if he has the strength and the knowledge. But the guilds were only for a few.

So the world has both gained and lost.

**79. The Beginnings of Commerce.** When the cities were still small their chief business was with the peasants, who brought as much of their produce as they did not need for their own use to sell or exchange for articles made in the town. Even now the market day is a busy time in European towns. But as the cities grew, the pack-horses of merchants trading with places farther distant became a sight more and more common.

To carry on distant trade in those days was difficult. Not only were there no railways, but even ordinary highroads were almost unknown. It is no wonder,

therefore, that carts and wagons were of little use, and that everything sent by land had to be strapped on the backs of horses. Wherever possible, trade was carried on by water. The rivers were great highways of commerce, and though the vessels of that day were not well fitted for long voyages on the ocean, land-locked seas like the Mediterranean and the Baltic were everywhere plowed by merchant ships.

But there were many other dangers besides those of nature. Pirates swarmed the seas. Often, also, people who lived on the seashore displayed false lights and signals so that vessels would be wrecked and they might seize the cargoes.

On land it was even worse. In the dark forests lived



TOWNSMEN OF THE MIDDLE AGES MARCHING OUT TO ATTACK A ROBBER BARON

fierce bands of outlaws. But the chief enemies of the merchants were the barons and knights whose castles

were perched upon crag and hilltop along their route. The feudal nobles always charged heavy toll upon the merchants who passed through their domains, and only too often they were real robbers. Swooping down from their castles, they seized both goods and horses, and the merchants were indeed lucky to escape with their lives.

But the townsmen of the Middle Ages were a strong and sturdy people who did not tamely submit even to the nobles. Now and again the citizens would arm themselves and march forth against the castle of some robber knight who had plundered them. Too late the wrongdoer often repented amid the blazing rafters of his fortress.

The towns also did their best to help the king in his efforts to bring the nobles to order and make them keep the peace. It was owing very largely to their aid that in France and England the rulers succeeded in overcoming feudalism. But since even a strong town could not do much alone, the cities soon began to form leagues. All the cities which joined agreed to protect each other and to unite against their enemies. Such leagues had laws and rules almost like those of a nation. Sometimes they raised armies and kept war vessels to guard their merchant ships.

The greatest of all the leagues was formed by the cities of northern Germany. It was called the Hanseatic League, and at one time comprised nearly seventy towns. The three leading towns were Lübeck, Hamburg, and Bremen, the two latter of which are still among the greatest seaports of Germany.

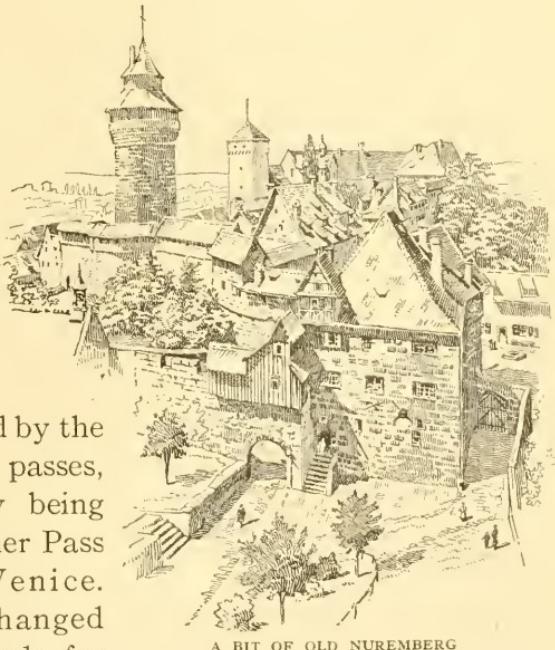
The merchants of the Hanseatic League traded everywhere in northern Europe. In Norway, Sweden, and

even in distant Russia they had trading stations, or "factories" as they are often called. They also had a famous trading place in London.

Belgium was then the greatest country for making all kinds of cloth. In its quaint cities, such as Bruges and Ghent, was heard on every hand the rattle of the looms. Here, too, the Hanseatic merchants came for peaceful commerce.

Southward, up the beautiful river Rhine, the Hanseatic merchants carried on a great trade. This route led to the flourishing cities of Nuremberg and Augsburg in southern Germany, with their high chimneys and peaked roofs showing above their strong walls.

Thence they journeyed to the foot of the Alps, which with their snowy peaks and glaciers cut them off from Italy. These they crossed by the steep mountain passes, the favorite way being the famous Brenner Pass which led to Venice. Here they exchanged their northern goods for the wonderful things Italy had to give or which bold Italian seamen had brought from the East.



A BIT OF OLD NUERMBERG

Northern Italy in those days was a great land of flourishing towns. First among them was Venice, which sent her ships to Egypt for rich trade with the East. This strange city was built on a group of small islands situated in the middle of a large, shallow bay. A great number of her streets were, therefore, canals, and the people of Venice to this day go from place to place in long, graceful boats called gondolas. Because she could not be easily attacked from the land, the city had prospered wonderfully, and many of the tall buildings which lined her watery streets were truly palaces, though owned by merchants instead of kings.

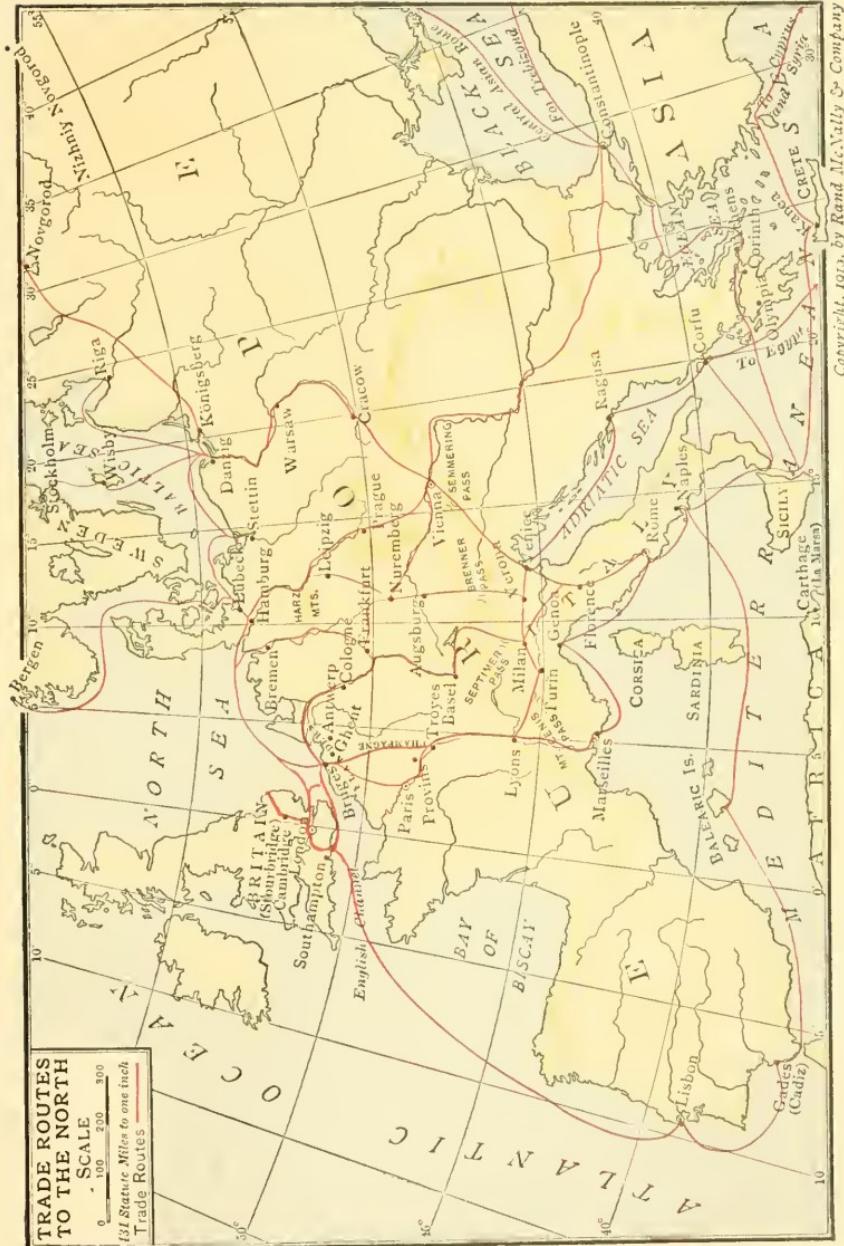
On the other side of Italy was the strong rival city, Genoa, stretching back on the hills from her long, curving harbor. Genoa, too, carried on a mighty commerce with the East, and many were the fierce battles when her numerous fleets met those of the Venetians. To Americans this old city is especially dear because here was the birthplace of Christopher Columbus.

Then there was Milan, famous for her wonderful cathedral, which rose amid the green plain of Lombardy, the most fertile land in all the world.

Farther south was Florence, noted for her manufactures, her great wealth, and the turbulent character of her people. Especially prized was the beautiful jewelry made by Florentine goldsmiths.

Besides these Italy had dozens of other great towns, all flourishing in trade and manufacture. Yet unlike the cities of the north, the Italian towns only too often engaged in war with their neighbors instead of joining interests for the common good.

In England the ancient town of London grew to be a



MEDIEVAL TRADE ROUTES TO THE NORTH FROM THE MEDITERRANEAN



flourishing city whose merchants vied with the nobility themselves in wealth and influence. More and more "London towne" became the center of everything that went on in England. Other important places were Bristol and Norwich. France, too, had growing cities, though, except for Paris, they are hardly as well known to us as the wonderful towns of neighboring lands.

Thus a kind of life new to the Middle Ages came. Successful merchants grew rich and intelligent. The fierce nobles who delighted only in war now had rivals in the race for power and influence, and even the clergy began to find that they themselves no longer had all the learning of the world. When men meet every day in business and in talk, they soon make each other think. After the towns appeared, progress in every line was much more rapid than ever before.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The peasants lived on great estates called manors. 2. They were serfs, bound to work a part of their time for the lord of the manor. 3. Their lives were hard and it was almost impossible for them to improve. 4. In the latter part of the Middle Ages towns and cities began to grow.



A STREET-SCENE IN VENICE

5. The cities got charters from the lords which gave more or less freedom. 6. The townspeople made their living by manufacturing articles and selling them. 7. All the people who made the same article belonged to a society called a "guild." 8. Only a few people were allowed to join a guild, and they must have a long course of training. 9. In time, the cities began to carry on distant commerce. 10. To overcome the great dangers to commerce, many of the cities formed leagues like the great Hanseatic League of Germany. 11. Germany, Italy, and Belgium were especially noted for their flourishing cities. 12. The townspeople made great progress in learning and civilization.

**Study Questions.** 1. What sort of place was a peasant village in the Middle Ages? 2. How many different occupations went on? 3. What was a "serf"? 4. Tell how the serfs carried on their agriculture. 5. Why did not the peasants learn better methods? 6. What things which we have to eat and drink were unknown in the Middle Ages? 7. Why did the peasants look forward to attending the fair? 8. Why were not the peasants always unhappy? 9. Why did towns and cities grow? 10. Why did the townspeople ask for charters? 11. What were free cities? 12. Tell how the towns of the Middle Ages looked. 13. What kinds of people came to visit such towns? 14. How did the ways of making articles in these cities differ from those of our day? 15. Why did young men wish to be members of guilds? 16. Explain what a man must do to become a guild member. 17. Why were few new methods of manufacturing discovered in the Middle Ages? 18. What were some of the good things about the guilds? 19. What were some of the bad things? 20. Tell some of the dangers to be met by merchants who carried on distant trade. 21. How did the towns try to overcome some of these? 22. What was the Hanseatic League? 23. Name some of the chief towns of the Middle Ages in Germany; Belgium; Italy; England. 24. What strange things would you have seen had you visited Venice? 25. Why did the people of the towns become intelligent and make progress?

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *When Knights Were Bold*, 102-121, 206-275, and *European Hero Stories*, 125-135; Harding, *The Story of the Middle Ages*. Also: Retold from "St. Nicholas": *Stories of the Middle Ages*, 107-131.

## THE CHURCH IN THE MIDDLE AGES

**8o. The Churches of the Middle Ages.** In the Middle Ages every city and town was proud of its church or churches. In our cities to-day we have many public buildings,—the city hall, the post office, the courthouse, and many more. The people now belong to different churches and worship in various places. But in the Middle Ages everybody in western Europe belonged to the great Roman Catholic church, and all alike took interest in building the same stately and magnificent structures for the glory of God and of their native city. Each guild had a fine hall for its meetings, and in most cities there was at some corner of the walls a powerful castle for defense. But in beauty and expense all these were far surpassed by the central church, or “cathedral” as it was called, if it was the church of a bishop.

The church in the Middle Ages was not merely a place for holding religious service. Great public meetings took place there. There, too, people came to visit with their friends, to hear news, and to see the fine and beautiful things which adorned the building. So all felt that the church belonged to them and was a part of their daily lives.

To people who love what is old and what is beautiful, there is nothing more splendid in the whole world than the cathedrals of Europe. The older ones are great solid buildings of stone, with heavy walls and massive towers. But later people learned how to construct churches in a new style, with lofty spires, graceful tapering ornaments, and long rows of buttresses which served to give strength and beauty at the same time.

If the outside of the cathedrals seems wonderful, the interior fills the visitor with admiration and awe. The long rows of great columns, the lofty roof, and the huge windows filled with stained glass through which the sunshine floods the building in a blaze of colored light,—all are parts of a wonderful picture never to be forgotten. But if the visitor begins to examine more carefully, his wonder will often become still stronger, for the artists and the workmen of the Middle Ages strove to adorn

column and ceiling with the finest carving their hands could produce. Even the tapering spires and turrets without are frequently so beautifully carved that they seem like lacework to the eye. Yet the graceful figures of saints and angels, the forms of flowers and fruits, the flowing scroll-work,—all are carved from the solid stone.



FACADE FROM THE CATHEDRAL OF AMIENS,  
NORTHERN FRANCE

*This church, built between 1220 and 1288, is said to be the finest example of Gothic architecture in France*

Sometimes, indeed, portions of the carving of the older time may seem rather rude and stiff as compared with

the work of sculptors of our day, but taken all together it cannot now be equaled.

One strange thing about the men who did this beautiful work was that they also loved what is grotesque and absurd. Often, right in the midst of the most beautiful carving, they put the figures of grinning imps and queer impossible beasts, or perhaps funny little figures of cats playing with mice, or naughty boys in trouble and howling with pain. But these whimsical things are never so placed as to spoil the general effect.

How could the men of the Middle Ages, who knew nothing of steam and little about machinery, and who did all their work by hand, construct such great buildings and fill them with such ornament? The answer is that they had patience. These great cathedrals often took centuries to build. One of the largest, that at Cologne in Germany, begun in the Middle Ages, was not finished until 1880. A boy who wanted to be a stone cutter might learn his trade, become a clever artist, and work all his life on the same building. In those times men cared not alone for pay, but felt satisfied if after years of toil they had adorned a column or wrought out an ornament which was really beautiful.

How impressive was the scene in one of these great cathedrals when the bishop in his flowing robes, accompanied by a great body of other clergy, solemnly chanted the service in the presence of all the citizens of some old town. The music, the dimly burning candles on the altar, the multitude of people devoutly kneeling,—all told of the piety and faith of that simple old time when men had not yet begun to differ and to fight about questions of religion.

**81. The Clergy and the Pope.** In those days, when hardly anybody had any learning and only the clergy could read and write, the officers of the church did many things which they would not think of undertaking now.

Every church, either in town or country, had at least one priest to perform its services. To him the simple people went with all their troubles, and if he were a wise man he could do much good. People who were wicked he sometimes "excommunicated,"—that is, he cut them off from coming to church. This usually so frightened them that they repented or pretended to repent. But since education was hard to get in the Middle Ages, the priest himself in the little peasant villages was often very ignorant. Some priests could hardly read the service.

Far more important was the bishop, who usually lived in a city and had a beautiful cathedral. A bishop wore a peculiar and impressive dress, with a tall hat called a miter, and carried a staff of a kind allowed to him alone.



A TYPICAL VILLAGE CHURCH

He was overseer or superintendent over all the priests and other clergy in the district, or "diocese" as it was called, which lay about his church. He traveled about to see that they were doing their

work well, and sometimes punished or dismissed those who were not faithful.

The bishop dwelt in a castle or palace and had charge of all the vast lands which belonged to the church, for since many people were anxious to make gifts to the church it had become very rich. Frequently he was stronger and more powerful than many dukes or counts. In fact, in many parts of Europe a bishop was a count at the same time.

Above the bishop was a still higher officer, called the archbishop, who lived in some very large city. Often a great archbishop, like the Archbishop of Canterbury in England, was the man next most important to the king of the country.

But the ruler of the whole church was the pope at Rome. The pope lived in the ancient palace called the Vatican, surrounded by the great court of officials and secretaries through whom he carried on his work. He made all the laws and rules of the church, decided all sorts of matters which were brought to his court from every part of Europe, and governed the city of Rome and the surrounding country.

In early times the election of a pope often caused great trouble, but it was finally settled that when one pope died all the great officers of the church who held the rank of cardinal should assemble to choose another. These notable persons were distinguished by the red hats and red robes which they wore, and were the special advisers of the pope. They usually chose the new pope from among themselves.



From his great seal  
THOMAS A BECKET,  
ARCHBISHOP OF  
CANTERBURY

During the Middle Ages the pope of Rome was for several centuries far more powerful than any king or other ruler. The popes claimed, and several times used, the power of deposing any king whom they found to be wicked or tyrannical, and of giving his throne to another. Many were the struggles between the popes and the haughty emperors or kings who tried to defy them; such, for example, as the wicked King John of England. But few rulers were able to hold out when the pope excommunicated them or ordered all the churches in their country closed.

Among all the great popes of this period perhaps the strongest were Gregory VII, the man who rose from the position of a humble monk to be the ruler of all Europe, and the famous Innocent III, who humbled King John.

With such men as these at the head, the mighty Roman church was certain to set on foot great things. But among all the enterprises which it started, the most exciting and interesting were the Crusades.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. The chief building of a city in the Middle Ages was the cathedral or church. 2. Many of these are among the most beautiful and wonderful buildings ever erected. 3. The cathedrals often took centuries to build. 4. The clergy in the Middle Ages had great influence because they were almost the only educated people. 5. The head of the church was the pope at Rome. 6. The popes often had far more power than any king or emperor. 7. Among the greatest popes were Gregory VII and Innocent III.

**Study Questions.** 1. Why did the people of the Middle Ages care so much for cathedrals and churches? 2. Why do people visit these old churches now? 3. Picture in your mind a great old cathedral, and tell what you see. 4. Give at least one reason why the workmen of the Middle Ages did such

beautiful work. 5. Why did the priest of a village church have so much influence among his people? 6. What was a bishop? 7. Tell some of his duties. 8. What was an archbishop? 9. What archbishop about whom we have studied dared to oppose a king? 10. Tell something of the power of the pope. 11. How was a pope chosen? 12. Name two great popes of the Middle Ages.

**Suggested Readings.** Tappan, *When Knights Were Bold*, 338-366; Grierson, *The Children's Book of English Minsters*, 1-81, 260-337; Harding, *The Story of the Middle Ages*.

## THE PILGRIMS AND THE CRUSADERS

**82. People Who Were Called Pilgrims.** Pilgrims are men and women who make journeys to places held sacred because of some event connected with religion. Some of the most famous pilgrims were those who visited the Holy Land in the eleventh and following centuries, to see and worship at the places made sacred by the life and deeds of Jesus.

In Rome the graves of St. Paul and St. Peter are still visited by great numbers of people. In England lies Thomas à Becket. The stone in the path leading to his grave has been worn down by the thousands who have worshiped at his place of burial in Canterbury Cathedral. To Mecca, in Arabia, the birthplace of Mohammed, the founder of the Mohammedan religion, crowds of pilgrims travel annually, for every believer in that prophet is expected to make a pilgrimage to that holy city once in his life.

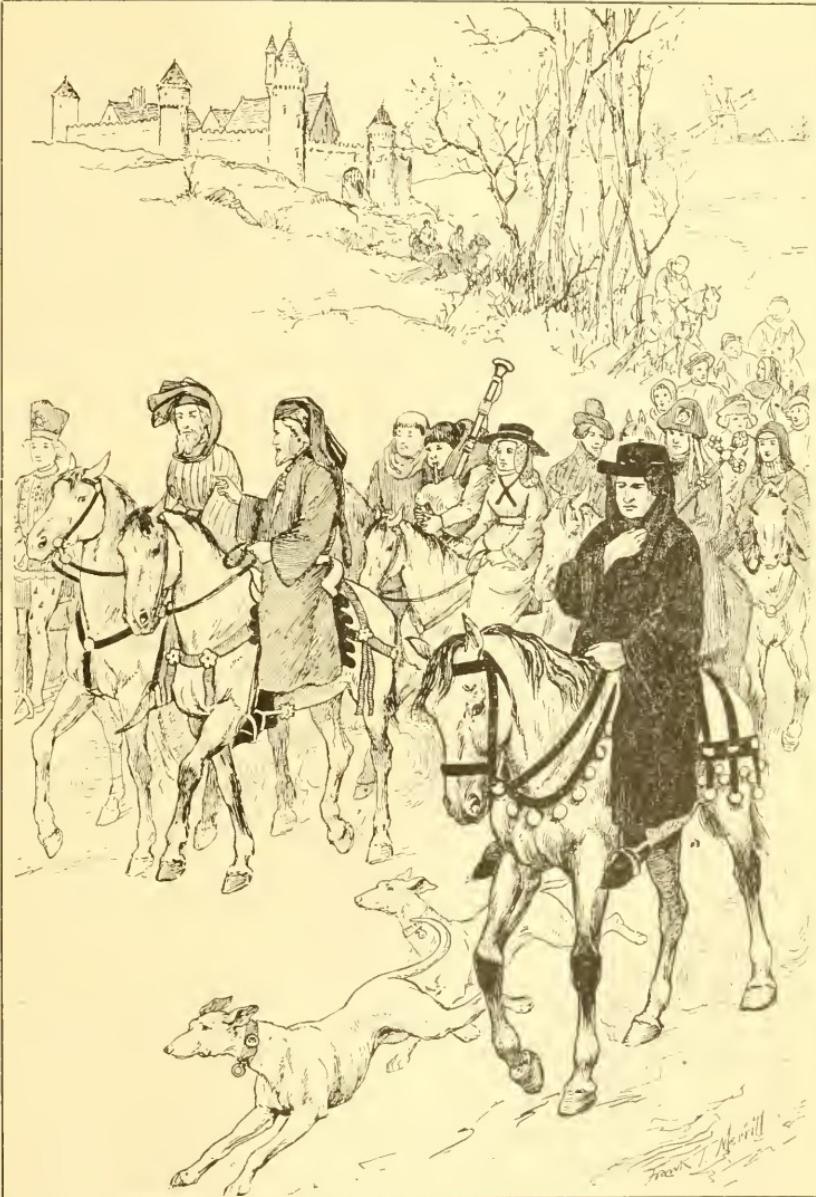
But the greatest pilgrimages were made to places in the Holy Land trodden by the feet of Jesus. In that far-off age the churches taught, and men believed, that they might get rid of great sins and terrible diseases by making such journeys. From every land of Europe,

therefore, pilgrims flocked to the Holy Land, singly and in crowds, to secure some great blessing.

But the journey was long and hard. They did not know the way well, the roads were bad and often dangerous. They had to climb mountains, cross rivers, and go on board ships before they reached the sacred spot. There were robbers and murderers along the route. The pilgrims often found themselves among people speaking a language they had never heard.

Finally books were written to make easier this hard journey. These were probably the beginning of the modern guidebooks that are so full of useful and interesting information about men and events, buildings and places. These old books told the pilgrims how they should get ready for the journey, what they should do on the way, and what prices they should pay. In some guidebooks foreign words and phrases were given, which helped the pilgrim in securing food and lodging or in paying for the sea trip from Europe to the Holy Land.

When the pilgrim had finished his pious visit, and was ready to go back to his native land, it was a widespread custom for him to make a gift of money or jewels to the saint whose tomb he had visited. By this means these hallowed places became very rich as the gifts piled up year after year. The pilgrim usually took back with him some token of his visit, just as people nowadays like to carry home a souvenir of their trip. In the case of the pilgrim he generally carried back a medal on which the name of the saint or some pious words were written. To his admiring neighbors he could thus furnish proof of his pilgrimage. The people listened with wide-eyed wonder to his tales of adventure



PILGRIMS ON THEIR WAY TO THE SHRINE OF THOMAS A BECKET AT CANTERBURY

and the stories of what he had seen. He became a man of renown in his native village after he had been to the Holy Land and seen the very places hallowed by the presence of Jesus.

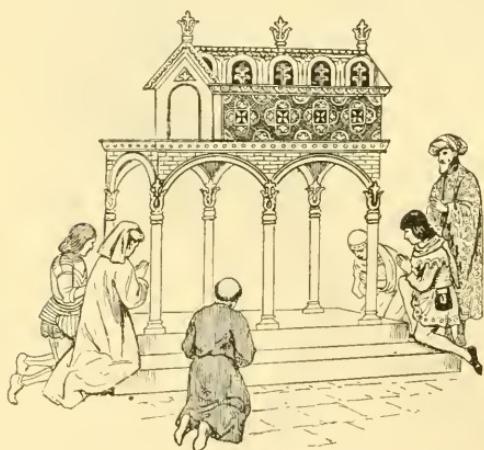
As time went on, pilgrimages to the Holy Land became more and more dangerous, and pilgrims went together in companies for protection. Although these crowds numbered several hundreds, and some of them were armed, not half of the people ever came back. Many died of starvation and sickness, or lost their lives by accident or in battle.

### 83. The Cultured Arabs and the Fierce Turks.

Though the Christian religion began in the Holy Land, that region had long before this time been conquered by the Arabs. Led by the great prophet Mohammed, this remarkable people had left the deserts of Arabia and

by a series of wonderful conquests overrun all southwestern Asia and northern Africa. They even crossed the Strait of Gibraltar and established their power in Spain.

Though originally a very war-like race, the Arabs soon became highly civilized. They adopted much



From glass in Canterbury Cathedral

PILGRIMS AT THE SHRINE OF THOMAS A BECKET

of the learning of the Greeks and Romans, and added other ideas which they got from the East. From them

the people of Europe learned much about the movements of the heavenly bodies and got their first notions of chemistry and other scientific subjects. The Arabs were best of all in mathematics. The Arabic figures, which we still use in arithmetic, are named after them.

At a time when the rest of Europe was almost barbarous the Arabs, or "Moors," of Spain had great universities and constructed beautiful buildings, such as the famous palace of the Alhambra, which are still viewed with delight.

The cultured Arabs were tolerant of people of other religions, and permitted the Christian pilgrims to worship at the shrines they held so dear. But presently western Asia was overrun by a ruder and fiercer Mohammedan tribe called the Turks. These came with fire and sword from central Asia, and conquered everything in their path. They refused to allow the pilgrims to see the holy places, and killed them by the hundreds.

The returning pilgrims told of this cruel treatment. They not only told of their own hardships but spoke of the shame and disgrace to Europe of permitting the Turks to hold the sacred places of the Christian religion.

The Greek emperor, a Christian prince whose capital was at Constantinople, became alarmed by the conquering



A WARLIKE TURK OF THE ELEVENTH CENTURY

Turks. He tried to defeat them in battle, but the soldiers of Mohammed were too powerful for him. He then thought of his good friend, the pope, to whom many of the pilgrims had told their stories, and who was the religious ruler over the nations of Western Europe. The emperor begged the pope to come to his aid and help in driving back the Turks.

**84. How the Crusades Began.** Pope Urban replied to the emperor's plea by calling a great council at Clermont in France. In the presence of assembled thousands, of rich and poor alike, he told the story of the sufferings of the pilgrims, and appealed to the people of all Western Europe to arouse themselves, stop fighting each other, and go to rescue the Holy Land from the hands of the infidel Turk. He stirred the mighty crowd to the greatest excitement. Soldiers drew their swords and waved

their banners, and the multitude sent up a mighty shout, crying: "God wills it! It is the will of God!" The pope then declared that "God Wills It" should be their battle cry, and that every soldier should wear a cross—upon his



PREACHING TO THE CRUSADERS

*An appeal was made not only to the spirit of religious enthusiasm but to the love of fighting and adventure*

breast as he went forth to the Holy Land, and upon his back as he returned.

The excitement, beginning at Clermont, spread to all classes in the remotest corners of Western Europe. Many preachers, during the fall and winter of 1095 and 1096 still further stirred the people. Rich and poor, soldier and beggar, joined the forces bound for the Holy Land to destroy the Turks. The summer of 1096 was chosen as the time for the great army to start.

But to those people who did not know how hard would be the battle or how far would be the march, the time seemed much too long in which to get ready. They were anxious to get at the Turks at once. Many wanted to be among the first to strike the blow that should drive the enemy from the sacred places. These impatient persons found their leaders. A great speaker, Peter the Hermit, and a poor knight called Walter the Penniless, put themselves at the head of these hosts and set out immediately for the conquest.

Unfortunately, this curious army of knights and monks, of artisans and peasants, of beggars and criminals, of women and children, had made very little preparation. What was still more unfortunate, they truly believed that Christ and the various saints would come to their rescue in some such way as that in which the Lord provided food for the Israelites in the wilderness.



CRUSADERS ON THE MARCH

*Each Crusader undertook the expedition on his own account, and was under orders only so long as he pleased*

These thousands of crusaders were like swarms of hungry locusts, eating people out of "house and home"

in the regions through which they traveled. They journeyed up the Rhine for a time, but when they came to the "beautiful blue Danube" they found the Hungarians maddened by their plundering. The Hungarians set their armies on them, and the Crusaders hastened forward to Constantinople.

But the emperor, instead of giving them a hearty welcome, was



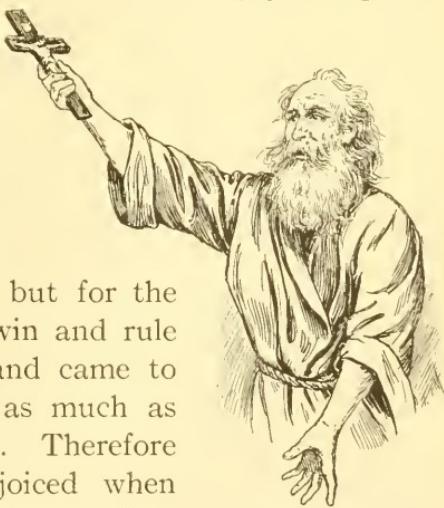
WALTER THE PENNILESS  
*Among all the Crusaders the knights in their suits of armor were the most noticeable*

only too glad to get rid of them because they set fire to some of his buildings in the city and began robbing the churches. He hurried them across into Asia Minor, where they fell a prey to the well-drilled and well-fed soldiers of the Turks. Neither the prayers of the monks nor the swords of the knights could gain for them the hoped-for victory. The Turks were victorious in the battles around the old town of Nicaea, and the sacred places remained in the hands of the infidels. Only a very few of the great host that began the journey under the banners of Peter the Hermit and Walter the Penniless ever saw their native land again, many were killed in battle, but thousands died of disease.

**85. The First Trained Army.** But Western Europe put more hope in the orderly troops that had been getting ready during that winter and summer. A great army was prepared, commanded by the best generals. The number of knights and their followers was very large indeed; three hundred thousand, some say, while others believe it was even larger. They came from several countries, but the French soldiers were the flower of the army. Each leader took his followers by a different route, but all agreed to meet at Constantinople. This was one of the richest and most beautiful places the Crusaders had ever seen. How overjoyed they were when the spires of that great city broke on their sight! They lifted up their voices in shouts of joy and praise.

But the emperor was now sorry he had asked the pope to send him soldiers to conquer the Turks. For many of the Crusaders wanted to conquer them not for the eastern emperor but for the lands they would thus win and rule over. They quarreled, and came to hate each other almost as much as both hated the Turks. Therefore the emperor greatly rejoiced when the Crusaders had passed over into Asia Minor.

The Turks were hardly ready for the knights of the West. They believed them to be another helpless crowd, half starved and poorly led.



PETER THE HERMIT  
*Preaching with great earnestness, he roused his hearers to a high pitch of enthusiasm*

What a mistake! Here were some of the best and bravest soldiers of Europe, and the Turks proved no match for them. So the Crusaders captured the old Asiatic town of Nicaea, where the first band of Christians had been defeated.

After this first great victory the Christian soldiers hurried southeastward to the ancient city of Antioch, a walled town and well fortified. But the Turks were brave and fought well. They did not yield as quickly this time. Many of the Crusaders grew discouraged. Some became homesick and returned to their native land. Victory seemed far away. They had been fighting for over three months.

**86. The Wonderful Spear.** This has been called the "Age of Faith," for people in that far off time believed many impossible things. About this time a pious monk had revealed to him in a dream—so the story goes—a wondrous spear or lance. This spear had pierced the side of Jesus at the time of His crucifixion, and now lay buried in a church near by. If this lance were once found and carried at the head of the army nothing could stand in the way of victory. The monk told the Crusaders that three times he had been assured of this in his dreams. But to find the Holy Lance much fasting and prayer by the Crusaders were necessary.

Finally, after long searching, the spear was found. A wonderful zeal now seemed to seize the entire army. They rushed to battle, stormed the walls, broke through, and Antioch fell. But the advantage gained was lessened by quarrels among the leaders as to who should rule the city and the surrounding region.

It was not until the spring of 1099 that the crusading

host, by this time much smaller in number, reached the city of Jerusalem. Here, too, they found a walled city, in a region where the springs or wells had all dried up. It was almost impossible to get water, and there was great suffering among the soldiers and their horses.



THE STORMING OF ANTIOCH

*The Crusaders were a year taking this rich city*

But in spite of these hardships the Crusaders went bravely to work to capture the city. After many days of hard fighting there seemed little prospect of success. But again their faith was put to the test. The priests declared that, in a vision, they had been told that if the army should march around Jerusalem, barefooted, for nine days, the city would fall.

That was indeed a strange procession which the Mohammedans saw—a barefooted army marching around their city, with bishops at their head, and every one chanting hymns. No wonder the infidel Turks mocked from their walls as they watched. Instead of fighting, these bold soldiers of the western world were singing songs and reciting prayers! So the Mohammedans thought.

Suddenly these praying soldiers were turned into fighting demons. The city was stormed from two sides at once. Showers of stones were hurled at the Turks;

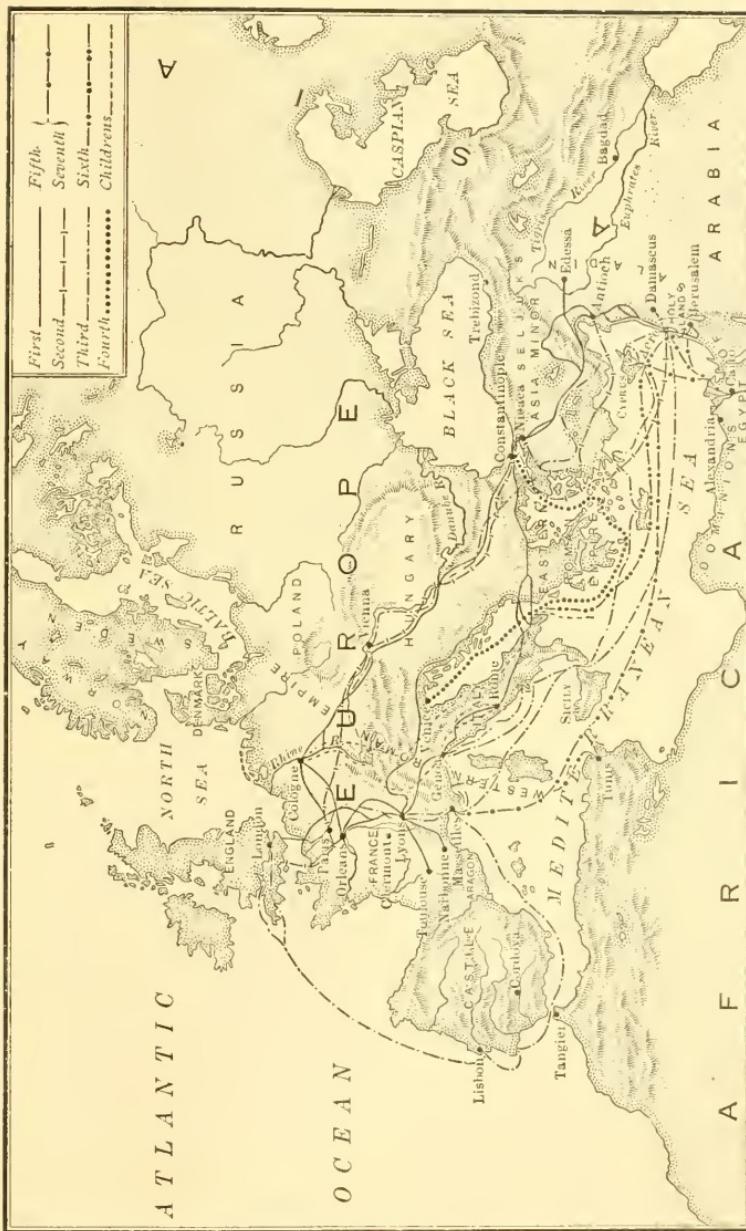
huge battering rams pounded great holes in the walls, through which many of the Crusaders poured, and by using great scaling ladders, hundreds climbed upon the walls. There was terrible hand-to-hand fighting, and the Christians overcame the Mohammedans.

**87. How the Crusaders Acted.** At last the city fell. But such a victory! Maddened by the long, brave fight of the Turkish defenders, the Christians put them to death by the most horrible cruelties. Mohammedans had their heads cut off, were shot through by arrows, or were driven to leap from high towers. Not satisfied, the Christians burned scores and scores of Turks. The bodies were piled so thick in the streets and public squares that people on foot or on horseback could hardly pass. This was all done in the name of the gentle Jesus who had taught His followers a very different lesson.

The Crusaders had won, and Jerusalem was in their hands. They appointed one of their great soldiers to rule over it and the country around. The city and the near-by land were called the Kingdom of Jerusalem.

Hundreds of the Crusaders returned home to greet their loved ones who had so long waited and prayed for them. But thousands did not return. They were filling unknown graves along the Danube, in the land of the Hungarians, or in the Holy Land. Yet the souls of those who died fighting the Turks were happy, according to the teaching of pope, bishop, and priests, and according to the belief of all the Crusaders.

Many new bands of Crusaders were constantly arriving in Asia Minor, for the Holy Land had to be guarded. The Turks were brave, and refused to give



Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company

ROUTES OF THE CRUSADES

up easily. They kept on fighting much of the time, and fifty years (1144) after the pope called the brave sons of Western Europe to the First Crusade, news came that the Turks were again victorious and had captured one of the most important strongholds of the Christians.



RICHARD I

*From an effigy at  
Fontevrault*

**88. The Second Crusade.** The Second Crusade was preached by an eloquent man whose title was St. Bernard. Two kings, one of France and one of Germany, gathered their hosts. St. Bernard told the Crusaders that the Christian who slew an unbeliever in the Holy War was sure of his reward, the more certain if he himself were slain. The Christian rejoiced in the death of the pagan because he thought Christ was thereby glorified. This was indeed a strange doctrine, but thousands accepted it. The Second Crusade did but little to win back the places held by the enemies of Christianity.

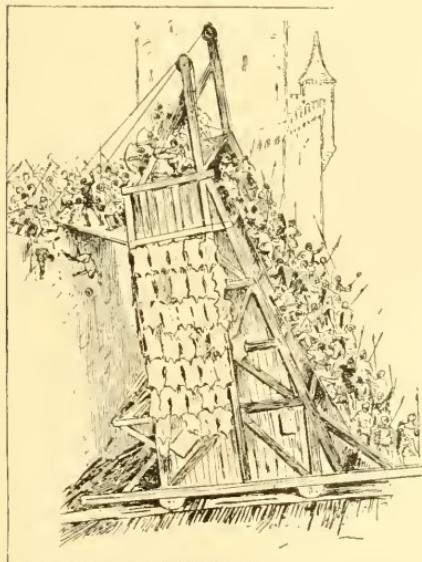
**89. The Third Crusade.** This was the crusade of Richard the Lion-Hearted. More than forty years had passed since St. Bernard called the men of the west to the Second Crusade. News came to Western Europe of the rising power of a great man among the Mohammedans,—Saladin, one of the greatest soldiers and wisest statesmen among the followers of Mohammed. He was kind in his treatment of his enemies; he was a man of his word; what he promised, he did.

Saladin's army swept up from Egypt, carrying everything before it. Jerusalem was threatened. The Christian soldiers marched out to meet Saladin in a great

battle. But the Mohammedans were victorious. The king of Jerusalem had been taken prisoner and many of the bravest Christians had been killed.

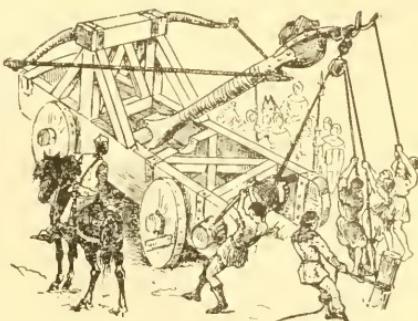
Saladin in turn laid siege to Jerusalem, and the city fell within a short time. (1187). Now the victorious Saladin taught the Christians a noble lesson in warfare. He did not kill a single prisoner, but set every one free.

It was the news of the capture of Jerusalem that called forth the greatest of the Crusades. The Third Crusade numbered among its heroes Richard the Lion-Hearted, King of England, Frederick Barbarossa, emperor of the Germans, and Philip Augustus, King of France; but the most romantic of these was Richard.



A MOBILE TOWER

*These towers greatly aided the besieging army to gain an entrance to city or castle*



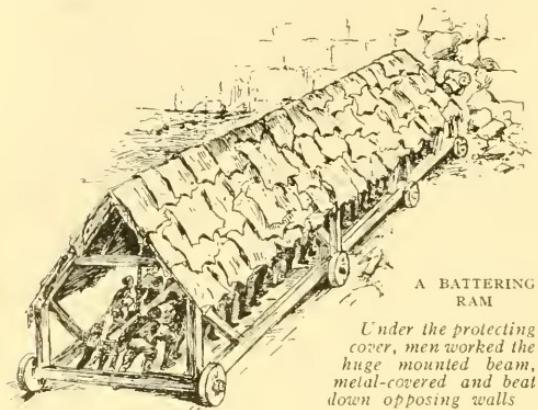
A MACHINE FOR HURLING STONES  
*Stone-hurling machines were in use even in Old Testament times*

Frederick Barbarossa was also an interesting character. He was so named because of his great red beard. He was a man seventy years

old, full of energy and courage, a true son of Germany. His army was the first to get ready, but the great man

lost his life in Asia Minor while swimming a river. His soldiers lost heart. Some returned home, but most of them fell in battle.

Philip and Richard were wiser. They did not take the long



A BATTERING RAM  
Under the protecting cover, men worked the huge mounted beam, metal-covered and beat down opposing walls

routes by land, which caused so much suffering, but took ships from southern France and sailed in almost a straight line for the Holy Land. They found the Christians already besieging Acre, a seaport not far from Jerusalem. The siege had been long and hard. The Mohammedans were good fighters, since Saladin was their leader.

But the fame of Richard the Lion-Hearted put new life into the besiegers. Richard was indeed a man to be admired. He was big, strong, and good looking. It was said that no man in England was strong enough to handle the king's battle ax. In battle no knight was able to keep his seat in the saddle when Richard gave him a thrust with a lance.

Now when Richard and his soldiers came to Acre, the Crusaders took new heart. He showed them where to place their battering rams and "moving towers" so as to do the most good. The stone-hurling machines were

again brought into frequent use, and in the end Acre fell. Men said that this result was largely due to the wisdom and courage of Richard the Lion-Hearted.

Again quarrels broke out among the Christians. King Philip went home, but others kept old jealousy and hatred burning. This division among the Crusaders prevented them from winning back Jerusalem. It is said that before he left the Holy Land Richard mounted his war horse and rode up a high hill in sight of the Holy City, but he lifted his shield and held it so that he might not behold the city he could not rescue.

**90. Richard and Saladin Good Friends.** While in the Holy Land Richard fell sick of a fever. His enemy, the noble Saladin, sent him fruits fresh from Damascus to tempt his appetite, and snow from the mountains to cool his parched lips. They exchanged messages and became good friends.

Richard made a treaty with Saladin by which the Christians were allowed to visit the holy places in peace and comfort. Thus by his wisdom and by the generosity of Saladin more was accomplished for the pilgrims than by all the Crusades both before and after.

But though the Lion-Hearted and Saladin became friends, Richard's name was a terror to the common



A QUARREL BETWEEN TWO LEADERS OF  
THE CRUSADES

people among the Mohammedans. After he was long dead, the fathers still told their children many stories of his deeds and of his great battle ax, which contained twenty pounds of iron in its mighty head. If a Mohammedan's horse shied at something at the roadside he would say, "How, now! Dost thou see Richard the king?" The mothers, too, frightened their crying children by saying, "Be quiet! The King of England will get you!"

On his way home the great soldier was shipwrecked near Venice and found himself in the hands of the Duke of Austria, one of his enemies in the Holy Land. The duke put him in prison in a lonely castle, where his own people could not find him.

### 91. The Story of the King's Friend.

**Long afterward men told a beautiful story of how King Richard was rescued.** In England he had a favorite minstrel, called Blondel. They had played the harp and sung together, particularly one song Richard himself had composed. Blondel set out to find his good master. He wandered from castle to castle, singing and playing under the windows the songs they used to sing. One evening, as the sun went down in the west, he sat himself down by a great castle among the hills, too tired and hungry to sing. From a window above



BLONDEL HEARS THE KING'S VOICE

came the strains of sweet music. He listened. It was Richard's voice, singing the song he knew so well. At

the end of the first verse Blondel took up the second. The king heard it, and recognized the voice. Blondel had come, and now he would be free!

But it was not an easy task to open the castle doors, for the duke demanded a great ransom. The people of England paid a vast sum in gold for the king's release, and when he reached his own country there was indeed great rejoicing. Richard the Lion-Hearted found so much to do in England he was never able to carry on another Crusade as he had hoped to do.

**92. Later Crusades.** The Crusades went on for nearly one hundred years after Richard's time. Among the saddest of them all was the Children's Crusade, in which thousands of boys and girls marched away never to come back.

The later Crusades began to take on a different character. Instead of fighting the Mohammedans the Crusaders sought to gain trading places in the East by attacking the Christian city of Constantinople. The cities of Venice and Genoa, in what is now Italy, came into possession of this foreign trade. As it grew, it drew to itself the rich spices and silks of the most distant



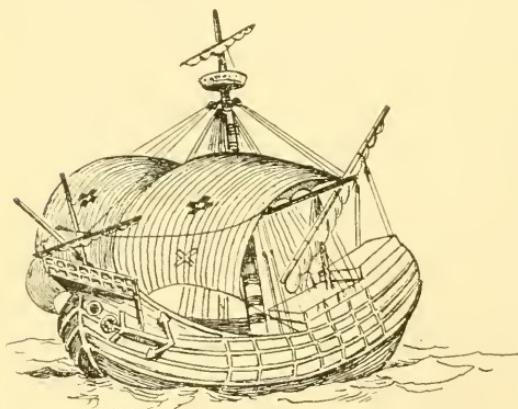
From an old engraving  
THE CHILDREN'S CRUSADE

parts of Asia. The merchants of Venice and Genoa then carried this trade to their own cities, to distribute it to the west and north.

**93. What the Crusades Did.** The pilgrims and Crusaders told wonderful tales of what they had seen and of the adventures they had had. As a result of the Crusades travel became safer than ever before. Consequently more people sought the East, some still to make pilgrimages, but an increasing number to see and to learn. Travel makes men wiser, broader, and more just and generous in judging strangers. The more the people knew, the more they wanted to know. Before the Crusades people had to do most of their counting by using Roman figures, such as I, II, III, IV, and so on, but after the Crusades were over people had learned - a much simpler way of counting by using the present

system, which they called the Arabic, because obtained from the Arabs. But we now know that it probably came from far-away India.

Again, people learned from coming in contact with the Moors, the Mohammedan invaders of Spain,



After print in Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*

A MERCHANT SHIP OF VENICE

how to ornament their houses more tastefully. The Alhambra, once one of the most beautiful buildings in

the world, was built in Spain by the Mohammedans.

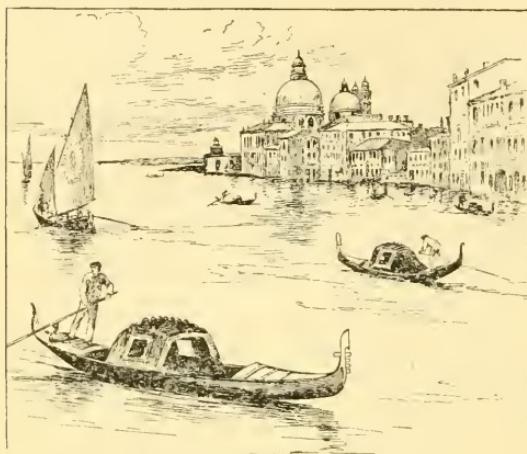
We have seen the Crusaders under Philip and Richard, in the Third Crusade, take ship and sail directly for the Holy Land. The merchants who agreed to furnish the ships needed larger and stronger vessels, not only to carry the soldiers but to care for their horses and to carry the food supplies demanded by the army, as well as the great machines for fighting. The Crusades, therefore, led to improvements in shipbuilding.

These merchants were quick to seize an advantage, and did not propose to have their ships go back empty. They loaded them with those products of soil, mine, and loom which Europeans were beginning to demand. Then, too, the merchants pressed for admission to the cities won by the Christians, and had places set apart for their agents, in which to buy and sell. From these places they traded and trafficked for the rich carpets, rugs, and shawls that came by caravan from Egypt, Persia, or even from India. Damasks, satins, silks, and velvets were added to their store. They even bought drugs and spices, sugars and perfumes. All these articles were loaded on ships for Genoa or for Venice, to be sent from these cities to various towns of Europe. This trade gave these two towns great advantages.

Venice became the richest and most beautiful of all the cities. In fact, it became a nation, ruled by a great man called the Doge. He was visited by the pope, the Emperor of Germany, and other rulers, so important a man was he. There were many wonderful things to see in Venice, and even in our day it is visited by thousands of people. It is a city built on a number of islands at the head of the Adriatic Sea. Many of its "streets"

are long, winding canals and, instead of having horses or street cars or automobiles, the people get from place

to place by means of little boats called "gondolas." These boats are long, narrow, and usually moved by one man standing at the stern with a long oar. The rulers of Venice strove to make their city a place of beauty. They employed the best

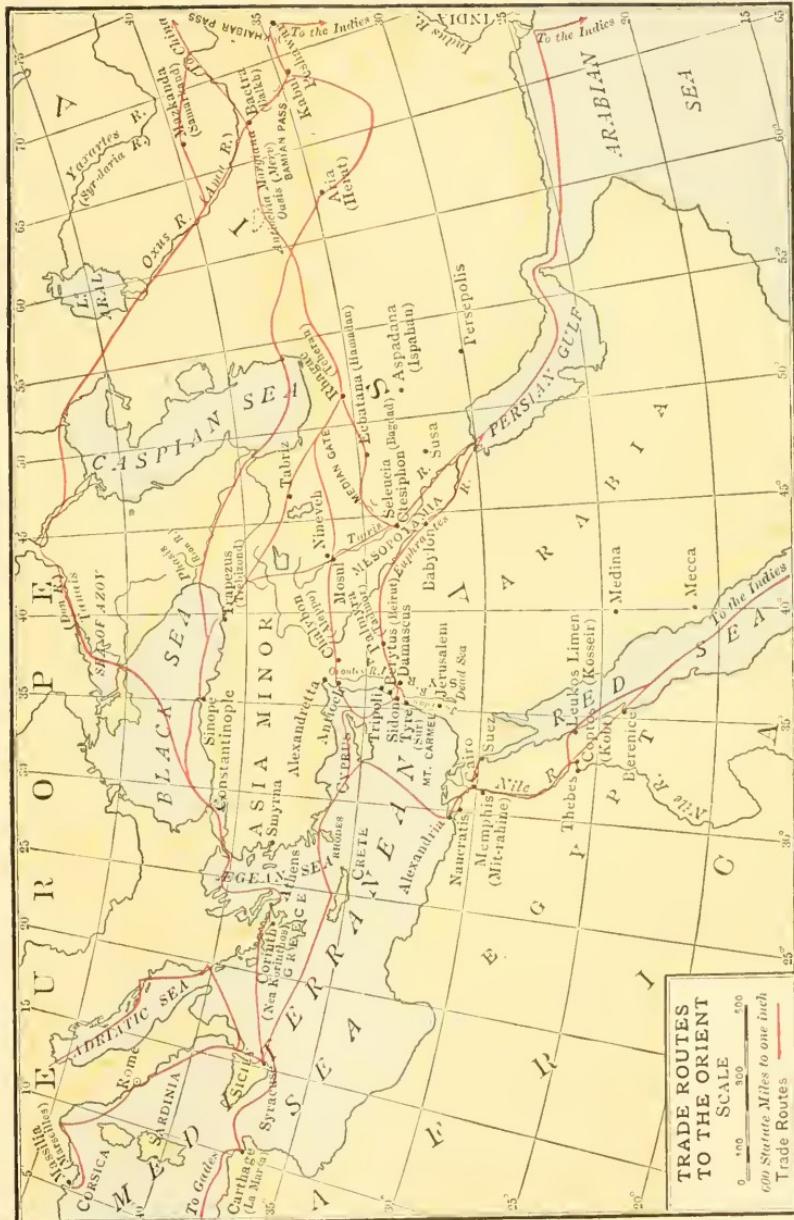


SCENE ON THE GRAND CANAL, VENICE

artists to carve in marble the faces or figures of the most famous of their men, other artists to paint on canvas the wonderful events that had taken place, and others, still, to make their houses, halls, and churches stately, grand, and beautiful.

Perhaps the place most widely known in our day is St. Mark's Piazza, a wide sort of square with St. Mark's Church at one side and on the other, shops or stores containing beautiful and costly ornaments.

Genoa was the greatest rival Venice had for the trade with the East. She, too, had ships and soldiers, and for a time got possession of the trade with Constantinople and the Black Sea. Finally, in a great sea fight, the vessels of Genoa were completely overcome by those of her rival, Venice, and from that time until the water route to India was discovered by the Portuguese, Venice



ANCIENT AND MEDIEVAL TRADE ROUTES TO THE ORIENT

Copyright, 1910, by Rand McNally & Company



had most of the rich trade of the Orient. But after the Turks won Constantinople and broke up the old trade routes to the East, and the all-water route around Africa to India became established, there arose on the shores of the Atlantic those splendid trading ports of Cadiz, Lisbon, Antwerp, Amsterdam, and London. This ocean commerce was established first by the Portuguese, then the Dutch, and later still the English sent men to East Africa, India, and China to buy the products of these lands.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. Early pilgrimages to the Holy Land and other sacred places. 2. How the pilgrim was looked upon when he returned home. 3. What the people of Europe learned from the Arabs. 4. The Turks robbed and killed the pilgrims in the Holy Land. 5. The Council of Clermont, and what came of it. 6. Two ways of conducting a Crusade. 7. How the eastern emperor received the Crusaders. 8. The siege of Antioch. 9. How Jerusalem was finally captured. 10. The Second Crusade. 11. The three great leaders of the Third Crusade, and what each did. 12. Richard the Lion-Hearted and Saladin. 13. The story of Richard and Blondel. 14. The later Crusades. 15. Increase of knowledge, travel, shipbuilding, and trade. 16. Rise of Venice and Genoa.

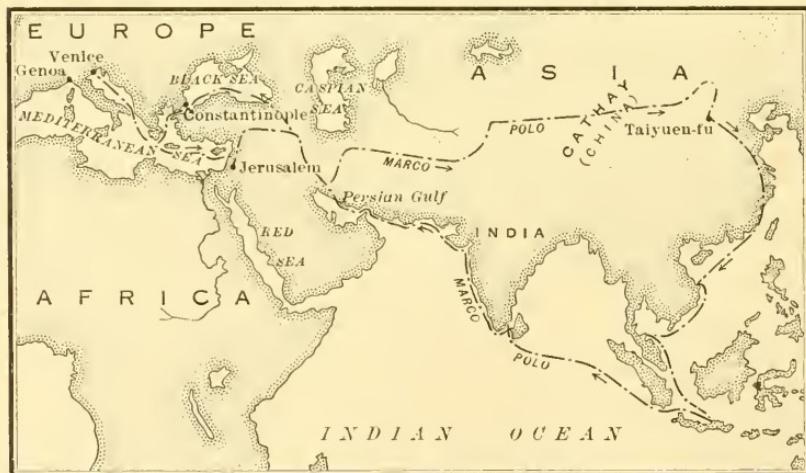
**Study Questions.** 1. How do the purposes of pilgrimages differ now from those made long ago? 2. What obstacles did the early pilgrims encounter? 3. Why did the eastern emperor ask the pope for aid? 4. Make a mental picture of the Council of Clermont. 5. What was the trouble with the Crusaders who followed Peter the Hermit and Walter the Penniless? 6. Draw a map of the great routes of the Crusaders. 7. Do you believe the story of the wonderful spear in the capture of Antioch? 8. Describe the miracle performed in the siege of Jerusalem. 9. In what way did the victors show that they were not true followers of the Cross? 10. What was the cause of the Second Crusade? 11. What was the cause of the Third Crusade? 12. Who was the romantic hero of this crusade? 13. What did the Lion-Hearted do, besides fight, to promote

the welfare of the Christians? 14. How did the later Crusades differ from the others? 15. Enumerate the good things accomplished by the Crusades.

**Suggested Readings.** KNIGHTS AND PILGRIMS: *The Story of the Nations*, 282-299; Colby, *Selections from the Sources of English History*, 41-44; RICHARD THE LION-HEARTED: Cheyney, *Readings in English History drawn from the Original Sources*, 68-70, 171-176; Robinson, *Readings in European History*, 321-329; Ogg, *A Source Book of Mediæval History*, 291-296.

### MARCO POLO'S GREAT JOURNEY AND HIS BOOK

**94. The Polos' Visit to China.** The voyages of the merchants of Genoa to the Black Sea, and of those of Venice to the eastern shores of the Mediterranean, were even more important in making men acquainted with the marvels of the hidden regions of the Far East, China



MAP SHOWING THE ROUTE OF MARCO POLO'S JOURNEY

and Japan, than were the wonderful tales of the pilgrims. The caravan, making its slow way across desert and

over mountain, brought back something besides the products of that land of romance and wonder: the tales told probably lost nothing in being repeated from mouth to mouth. But more truthful and more real were the stories brought by those few merchants and travelers who had braved the dangers themselves and gone to the Far East.

Two brothers named Polo who lived in Venice sought these strange lands. So charmed were they with their first visit, that after a few years at home they took with them, on a second journey, young Marco, son of one of the brothers. Over three years were spent in reaching the king of that far-distant country. His name was Kublai Khan, and his country was called Cathay or China.

Young Marco became a favorite of the great king, and was sent to the most distant parts of China and to other countries in his service, while his father and uncle were busy gathering rich treasures of precious stones.



Based on a medallion in Yule's  
*Life of Marco Polo*

THE POLOS' RETURN HOME

Twenty years passed, and the time came when the brothers longed to return home. The king did not wish to part with Marco, but finally gave his consent. It took nearly three years to reach Venice. The two brothers had gray hair and wrinkled faces, and Marco, only a boy when they set out, had long since grown to be a man. Not even their kinsfolk knew them when they reached home, and all refused to believe in them and their travels.

To prove the truth of their stories the travelers decided to give a feast, to which they invited many old-time friends and neighbors. At it they tore open the seams of their travel-stained clothes, and out rolled stores of diamonds and emeralds and rubies and sapphires. The people were convinced that these men were really the Polos come back from a far-off land.



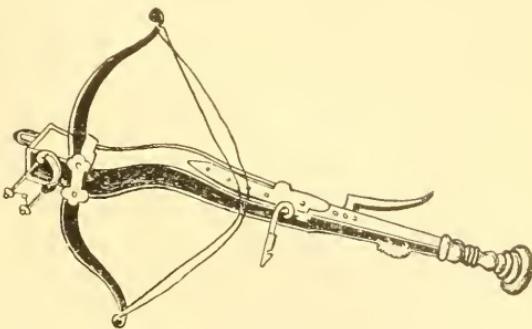
After a medallion in Yule's *Life of Marco Polo*  
MARCO POLO IN PRISON, DICTATING AN ACCOUNT  
OF HIS TRAVELS

From being rivals for the trade with the East the people of Venice and the people of Genoa became deadly enemies. They fought mainly on the Mediterranean Sea. Marco

Polo was given command of the ships of Venice, and in a great sea fight seven thousand Venetians were captured.

Among them was Marco Polo. The Genoese threw him into prison, where he spent most of his time in preparing an interesting story of his travels in the Far East.

This famous old book was written in the very town in which later Columbus was born. If Columbus did not read the wonderful tales of Marco Polo, he certainly heard them told, and saw the result of those journeys in the making of better maps and in the desire of the people for the products of far-off lands.



A CROSSBOW

*The crossbow was mounted on a stock and discharged by means of a catch or trigger*

## INVENTIONS IN THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY

**95. Early Inventions.** There were many things known to the people of the fifteenth century, but they had many more to learn. They had not uncovered the great secrets of nature, and did not know about several of the most wonderful inventions and discoveries of our day.

But by the fifteenth century interesting inventions had been made. We have already seen that centuries and centuries ago man probably lived in caves and holes in the ground as a means of protection. Finally he learned to build some sort of a house or fort for safety. He early learned the art of making rude rafts and boats to carry his family and goods from place to place on the water.

In those old days people invented the bow—the longbow and the crossbow—and also the great battle ax or hatchet to get their food or to drive off their enemies. Later they added to their stock of food and clothing by inventing the plow and the spinning wheel.



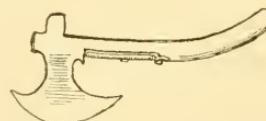
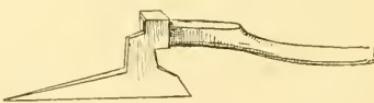
MAN WITH LONGBOW

*Longbows were often five or six feet long, the shorter being used by horsemen, the longer by foot archers*

Early in this book (p. 13), you read the story of how the Egyptians and Assyrians learned the art of writing, and how they left records of the mighty deeds of their kings. The Phoenicians invented the alphabet, so that men could more easily write the records of their lives. This was a great step forward, for the people of one age could thus

learn about the success or failure of the people of past ages.

**96. Invention of Printing.** Before the invention of printing in the fifteenth century men made books very slowly and very laboriously by copying page after page by hand. This was the sort of book that Marco Polo made. But in this century, in both Holland and Germany, men laid claim to the discovery of printing. So simple was this invention, that men wondered it had not been discovered long before. It consisted in cutting



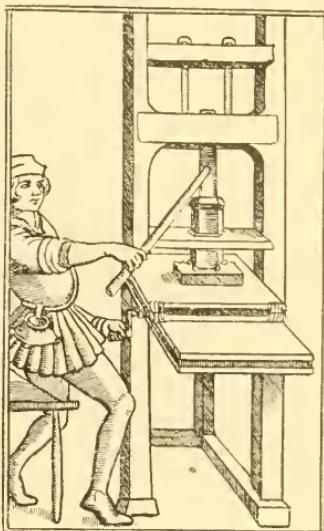
TWO BATTLE AXES

*Upper, German horseman's (in Dresden Museum); lower, Slavonic (after drawing by Durer)*

the different letters out of separate pieces of wood, and in so placing the letters as to spell words on a printed page. In this way whole books could be printed if enough letters were made. Finally Gutenberg, one of the inventors, made a printing press that turned out pamphlets and books, especially the Bible, in large numbers for that age.

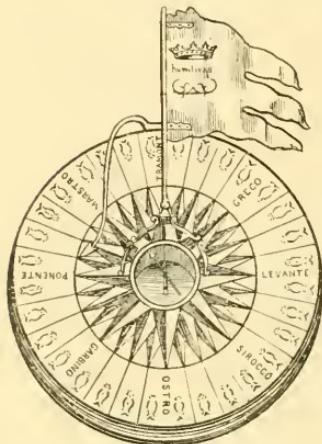
The invention came at a happy time in the world's history. The new learning was beginning to brighten the dark places of Europe. Stories of the wonders seen by great travelers like Marco Polo were eagerly sought. The Turks were breaking down the old trade routes to the distant East, and even now the bold sailors of Western Europe were beginning to brave unknown seas in search of a water route to India.

**97. The Compass.** Among the inventions that encouraged seamen to venture into the unknown was the mariner's compass. With its faithful "finger" always pointing toward the north pole, the sailor need not fear to venture forth. The compass was known to man centuries before the hardy sailors of Western Europe began to use it. In fact, it is said that Marco Polo brought with him from China a knowledge of this faithful little instrument. It is doubtful whether Columbus and the explorers after him would have ventured to cross



GUTENBERG PRESS

the mighty ocean to America without its help. But while we know and trust the compass without question, the sailors of the fifteenth century many times doubted this "faithful friend" of the seamen.



EARLY COMPASS

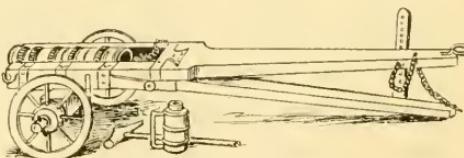
*The points were designated by the usual (Italian) names of the winds, as Levante, east; Sirocco, south-east, and so on*

**98. Discovery of Gunpowder and Invention of Cannon.** No one knows when gunpowder was first discovered. It is really a mixture of charcoal, sulphur, and saltpeter. Some have declared that it came from the Far East, while others assert it was brought to Europe by the Mohammedans. Cannon, too, were an important invention, which of course would be of no value

without gunpowder. These two inventions have produced wonderful changes among men.

After they came into use the walled town and the great castle were doomed, since they afforded poor protection. The knight with his great load of armor could not stand against cannon, and the common man had a chance to win in battle. When the knights and the castles were gone, a hard blow had been struck at feudalism.

But how different were the cannon then from the mighty guns belching forth death now! At first they shot only stone balls, and not much farther than a good bowman



ANCIENT CANNON

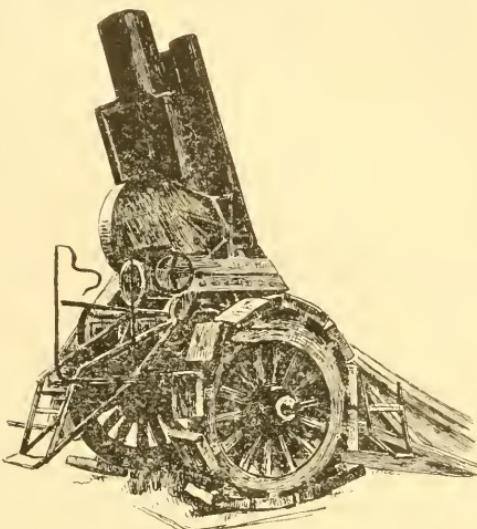
sent his arrow. Now the terrible sixteen-inch gun sends its ball plunging for a distance of several miles, spreading destruction in its path.

SUGGESTIONS  
INTENDED TO HELP  
THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.**

1. Merchants and travelers brought news of the Far East.
2. For twenty years Marco Polo visited far eastern countries.
3. How the Polos convinced the people of Venice that they were telling the truth.
4. Marco wrote his great book while in prison.
5. What great inventions the people of the fifteenth century did not know about, and what they did know about.
6. The great inventions that helped toward the discovery of America.

- Study Questions.**
1. Which were the travelers that people loved most to hear?
  2. Prove that Marco Polo was one of this kind.
  3. Tell, in your own language, what the Polos did in Asia.
  4. Why did they hold a great feast on their return home?
  5. Explain how Marco wrote his book.
  6. How did it probably help Columbus?
  7. In what sort of "houses" did men probably live at first?
  8. What things do you imagine they had in their holes in the ground?
  9. What sort of clothes did they wear?
  10. What difference is there between the way men make books now and the way they were made in Marco Polo's time?
  11. What makes the compass always point to the north star?
  12. How have gunpowder and cannon influenced war?
  13. How did fighting with guns help to make a knight no better than a common soldier?



A PRESENT-DAY SIEGE GUN

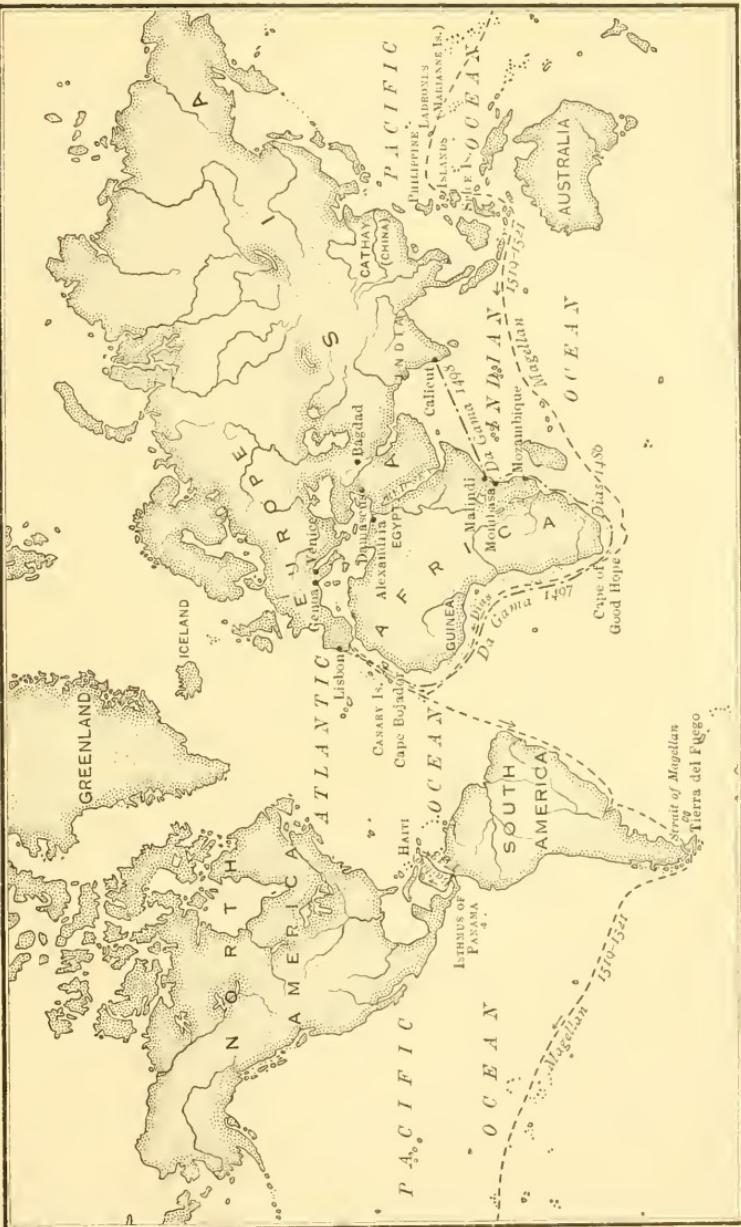
*These huge guns can carry a distance of 17 miles, sending projectiles with such force that few of the world's fortifications would be able to withstand them*

**Suggested Readings.** Brooks, *Story of Marco Polo*, chaps. 1, 2, 14, 20, and 21; Knox, *The Travels of Marco Polo for Boys and Girls*; Old South Leaflets, Vol. II, No. 32, *Marco Polo's Account of Japan and China*; Forman, *Stories of Useful Inventions*.

## THE RACE FOR INDIA BEGINS BETWEEN PORTUGAL AND SPAIN

**99. Prince Henry, the Navigator, Seeks an All-Water Route to India.** We have said that the Turks broke up the old Italian trade routes to India. Prince Henry of Portugal determined to find an all-water route to the Far East. He first opened a sort of school for sea captains and sailors, and here gathered many wise teachers of geography and of subjects bearing on the sea and the art of sailing ships. He gave his work a practical turn by sending sea captains down the west coast of Africa to find out about an all-water route to India. There had been stories, of the long ago, about men who had sailed around Africa, and into the Indian Ocean. Prince Henry was now determined to have his men find out if these stories were true.

At last, after several trials, a great captain returned with the news that his vessel had succeeded in passing one of the most dangerous capes of that coast. Prince Henry rewarded him and urged his other great sea captains to push farther on. Other attempts carried the brave sailors around to the Gulf of Guinea, but they were dismayed at finding that the coast of Africa again turned southward. This seemed to prove what some geographers taught, that Africa extended so far south no man could sail around it. Stories of the "gold coast" aroused their



Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company

THE RACE FOR INDIA

Early Portuguese voyages down the coast of Africa, and the routes to India

greed, however, and finally Bartholomeu Dias rounded the Cape of Good Hope and looked out upon the Indian Ocean (1486). The old stories of men sailing around Africa were true, but Prince Henry had been long in his grave before they were proved.

Vasco da Gama, a wise and brave sailor, set out from Portugal (1497) and reached the long-sought India by an all-water route around the Cape of Good Hope. Portugal was happy, but the way to the Far East was far longer than any one had imagined.

**100. Christopher Columbus, Seeking India, Finds America.** Already another man, Columbus, had thought he could find India and the East by a shorter way. He sailed to the westward to test his plan. The land he discovered was America, but he returned fully convinced that he had reached the land of his dreams.

Da Gama's voyage to India was indeed a great event, but the discovery of America proved far greater. The Atlantic rose in importance above the Mediterranean. The eyes of all Europe gradually turned westward. The rich cities of Italy fell into decay, while the great ports on the Atlantic began a growth which has never ceased. The sailors of Genoa and Venice were already leaving for Portugal and Spain.

We have already learned about the wonderful work of Genoa in the Crusades and in the wars with Venice. Now we see this old city as the birthplace of Christopher Columbus. He spent his boyhood in this old town of ships and sailors. Every day, as the boys played along the wharves, they listened to wonderful tales of adventure such as only the sailors of that old time could tell. Columbus was eager to go to sea. As he was growing

to manhood a kinsman often took him on the Mediterranean, where they had to face storms and sea robbers.

We have also seen how the breaking up of the trade routes to the East sent sailors flocking to Portugal and Spain, where great events were taking place. Bartholomew, a brother of Columbus, was already living in Lisbon, whence he went on the great voyage with Dias around the Cape of Good Hope.

Columbus, too, hastened to Lisbon, and soon was in the midst of great happenings. Prince Henry, though long dead, had so aroused Portugal that she was doing her best to uncover the ancient route to India.

Columbus had figured out that the world is round and that he could find India or Japan by sailing directly westward. From all the charts, maps, and books of travel he could obtain he reached the conclusion that the East Indies were where the West Indies really are. The blunder in geography proved useful. For what king would have granted aid to sail twelve thousand miles, even though Columbus had wanted to go?

**101. Columbus Seeks Aid.** Tradition tells us that, still loving the land of his birth, Columbus gave Genoa the first opportunity to be the discoverer of America, but she refused. Then, armed with all the proof he could gather, he put his plans before the King of Portugal, only to have them rejected.

He now made his way to Spain, where he hoped for better treatment. But Spain was busy fighting the Moors—Mohammedans who had come from Africa. Spain's king and queen did indeed give him a hearing before their wise men: some were for him and some were against what they called the wild scheme of a

madman. Columbus had to wait many years. He grew tired. His money was almost gone, and his clothes were

shabby. He was a man of noble bearing, but the boys on the street tapped their heads when he passed by, as if to say, "He is a bit crazy."



COLUMBUS EXPLAINING HIS PLANS TO THE  
PRIOR AND TO PINZON

and drink for his little son Diego. The old prior, the head of the convent, was struck by his dignified and noble appearance. He asked questions, and the answers of Columbus led him to send for Pinzon, a great sea captain, and others from the port of Palos. There in the room of that little convent was told to eager ears the tale of Columbus' ambition, of the proofs he had gathered, and of the misfortunes he had met.

No time was to be lost. The prior hastened to Queen Isabella and begged her, for her own sake and for the glory of Spain, not to allow Columbus to depart. She sent for him, and entered into an agreement by which she pledged her jewels, it is said, to the great work of discovery. Columbus was happy in the opportunity he now had to prove his point. He had waited and worked nearly twenty years for it.

**102. The Discovery of America.** It was a sad time in the old town of Palos when the queen commanded its sailors to go with Columbus where man had never sailed before. Three vessels and ninety sailors set out on August 3, 1492. The *Santa Maria*, the largest ship, was ninety feet long by twenty broad. On this ship Columbus raised his banner as admiral. The *Pinta* was smaller, a faster sailer, and commanded by that great sea captain, Pinzon. The *Niña*, called "the baby" from its name, was the smallest and was intended for use in shallow waters, for running near the shore or up narrow rivers.

They sailed directly southwest to the Canary Islands. After repairs they plunged westward into an unknown sea. As the Canaries faded from sight many of the sailors broke down and cried. They never expected to see



COLUMBUS BEFORE THE WISE MEN OF SPAIN

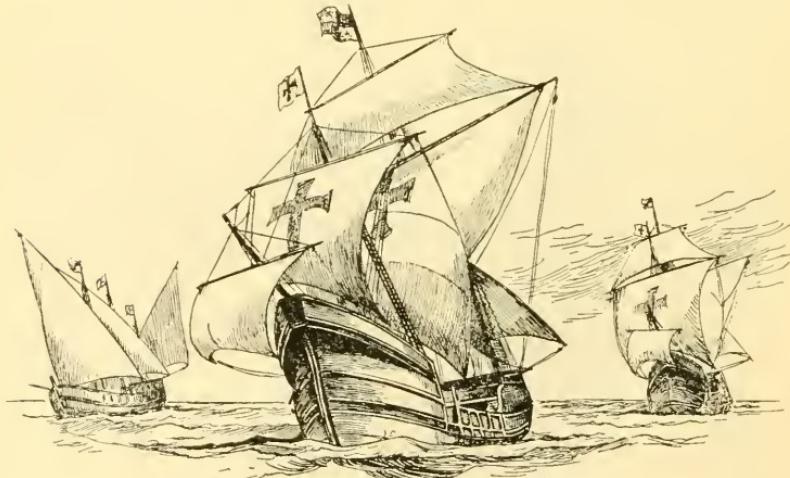
*After painting by the Bohemian artist, Václav Brožík, in Metropolitan Museum, New York*

Spain again. The imaginary terrors of the deep were too much for them. The trade winds caught them up, and

wafted them along. "How shall we ever get back?" they cried. Then came vast fields of seaweed, often stretching out farther than they could see. They feared sunken rocks, or that they might run aground. Even that faithful friend, the compass, began to vary from its first position.

Finally they plotted to throw Columbus overboard, but he quieted their fears by pointing out the signs of—and—the green branches they had seen upon the water, and the flocks of birds which now and then came flying by.

One beautiful evening, after the sailors had sung their vesper hymn, Columbus made a speech, pointing out how God had favored them with clear skies and gentle winds, and telling them that they were so near



THE COLUMBUS CARAVELS

*From the reconstructed vessels built by Spain and presented to the  
World's Columbian Exposition in 1893*

land the ships must not sail any more after midnight.

That very night, far across the darkening waters, a

light was seen to rise and fall, as if carried on land. In a few hours the *Pinta* fired a joyful gun telling that land



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS

had been found. All was excitement on board, and not an eye was closed that night. Overcome with excitement, some of the sailors threw their arms around Columbus' neck and cried for very joy. Others fell upon their knees and begged pardon, and promised faithful obedience to his every wish.

On Friday morning, October 12, 1492, Columbus landed on the shores of the New World—on an island of the Bahama group. He was dressed in a robe of bright red and carried the royal flag of Spain. Around him were gathered his officers and sailors, dressed in their best clothes and carrying flags, banners, and crosses. They

fell upon their knees and kissed the earth, and with tears of joy streaming down their cheeks they gave thanks.



COLUMBUS ENTERING BARCELONA, SPAIN, ON THE RETURN FROM  
HIS FIRST VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY

Columbus drew his sword and after the manner of that age declared the land belonged to Spain.

The natives, frightened by the strange scene, were looking on from behind bush and tree. They imagined that the ships had come up out of the sea or down from the sky, and that Columbus and his men were gods. Columbus was almost as much mistaken as were the natives. He believed the people were "Indians," that is, people of India, and it was many years before the Europeans knew better.

Columbus and his men were deeply disappointed, for instead of rich people wearing all sorts of fine clothes and

ornaments of gold and silver, they saw only half-naked savages, with painted faces, living in rude huts.

After a few days of exploration Columbus came upon Cuba, the largest island he had seen. He thought this was surely Japan. His ship was wrecked, and the *Pinta* had gone he knew not where.

**103. The Return to Spain.** Collecting gold and silver articles, plants and birds, animals and Indians, Columbus began his voyage home, January 4, 1493. After terrific storms he reached Palos in the spring, when nature is at its best in southern Spain.

The joy in that old seaport! The people, who had given them up as lost, now ran shouting through the streets. The king and queen sent for Columbus. What a journey! The villages and country roads swarmed with people anxious to get sight of the wonderful man and of the products he had brought. The Indians were the center of all eyes.

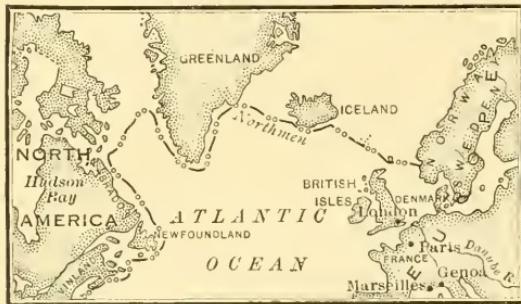
Columbus entered the city a hero. The very house-tops, to say nothing of the streets and windows, were crowded with happy people. He went directly to the court of Isabella. As the king and queen arose, Columbus fell upon his knees

and kissed their hands. When he had finished telling his story, the people, shouting, followed him to his



THE MONUMENT TO COLUMBUS AT  
GENOA, ITALY

home. How like a dream it all appeared to the man, who, only a year before, was begging bread from those very people!



MAP SHOWING THE DISCOVERIES OF THE NORTHMEN

hundred people sailed in seventeen fine ships to search out the rich cities of their imagination (1493). After four years of disappointment, they returned to Spain. They had not found the riches of India.

On his third voyage Columbus sailed along the northern shores of South America, but did not know he had found a continent. When he reached the West Indies the officers put him in chains and sent him back, broken-hearted, to Spain. Isabella, his friend, set him free and started him on his last voyage to America (1502). He met with shipwreck and returned, deeply disappointed that he had not reached the Indies with their fabled wealth. He died soon after, never thinking that America lay between him and his dreams. Spain was so busy with exploration that she took little note of the passing of this great man, and it remained for America to do fitting honor to his memory in the great Columbian Exposition held in Chicago (1893).

**105. Voyages of the Northmen.** Columbus never knew that he had discovered a new continent. Had he

**104. Other Voyages to America.** All Spain was eager for a second voyage. Now every port was anxious to furnish ships and sailors. Fifteen

known it, he probably would not have realized that it was a part of the same continent that had been discovered many years before (1000) by some of the bold sea-rovers from the North. In our study of England we have already learned about these hardy Danes and Norwegians, who were called Vikings. Some of the boldest of the Vikings settled in the snow-clad island of Iceland. One of them, named Eric the Red, sailed farther away to the still colder island which we now know as Greenland. Later, many Northmen went to that new land. Finally Leif Ericson, son of Eric the Red, and some companions sailed around to the south and discovered the coast of North America. He was afterward called "Leif the Lucky." The exact place where the Northmen settled for a time is not known, but it is supposed to be somewhere in New England. They were so delighted with the new land, where beautiful flowers grew and birds sang gayly among the trees, that they would gladly have made it their home. Finding vines with grapes, they called the new land Vinland. But there was one great obstacle to making it a permanent abode. Brave as



THE LANDING OF LEIF ERICSON IN VINLAND

they were in venturing out into an unknown sea; they were no match for the savage Indians in a land fight. For eight or ten years the Vikings continued their voyages to the new land, but the growing hostility of the Indians led them to abandon it. They sailed away never to return.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

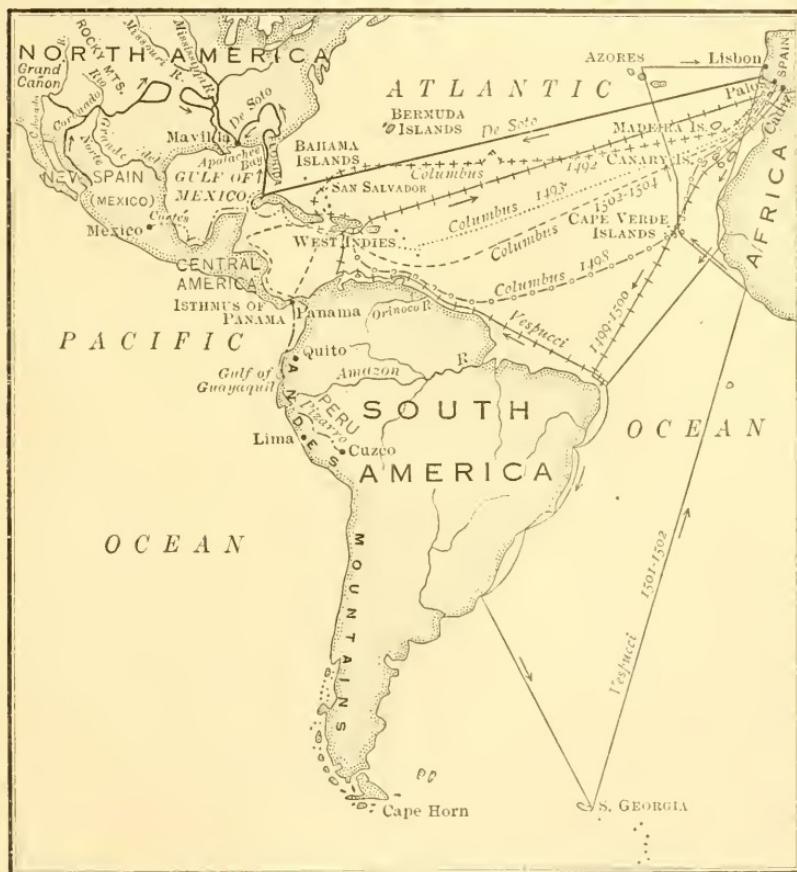
**The Leading Facts.** 1. The famous old "school" of navigation established by Prince Henry. 2. News from the Gulf of Guinea and from the "gold coast." 3. The voyages of Dias and Da Gama. 4. Columbus' dream and its consequences. 5. Genoa, and the boyhood of Columbus. 6. Columbus goes to Portugal and then to Spain. 7. Visits Palos on his way to France. 8. The queen's pledge, and the preparations for the voyage. 9. The first voyage, and its events. 10. What the Indians thought, and what Columbus thought. 11. Columbus' reception at Palos and at the court. 12. His treatment by Spaniards, and his death. 13. The Northmen discover a new world but make no use of it.

**Study Questions.** 1. What caused Prince Henry to start his "school," and what was his purpose? 2. What was Columbus' dream? 3. Prove that Genoa was a good place for a sailor to be born. 4. What causes sent Columbus to Portugal? to Spain? 5. Why was the convent near Palos a good place for Columbus to stop? 6. What were the motives leading Columbus to make his voyage? 7. Tell the imagined feelings of Columbus and his men when landing. 8. Why was Columbus disappointed? 9. What effect did his discovery have in Spain? in the rest of Europe? 10. What did he not know when he died? 11. Who were the first to discover America? 12. What name was given to the new land? 13. Why were Marco Polo's travels of more importance than those of the Vikings?

**Suggested Readings.** Beazley, *Prince Henry the Navigator*. COLUMBUS: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 4-6; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 38-60; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, 19-52; Brooks, *The True Story of Christopher Columbus*, 1-103, 112-172. THE NORTHMEN: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 7-9; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, 3-15.

## SPANISH EXPLORERS OF THE NEW WORLD

**106. Why America Was Named for Americus Vespuccius.** The New World should have been named for



THE SPANISH VOYAGES OF DISCOVERY TO NORTH AMERICA

Columbus, and it is, sometimes, called the "Land of Columbia." History, however, takes the name of this fair country from one who, probably, least deserved it—*Americus Vespuccius*.

It is not certain how many voyages he made to this country, when he made them, where he made them, or that he ever commanded an expedition. Why then should he be honored by having his name given to America?

It is said that Vespuclius coasted along South America as far south as Brazil. He wrote letters telling his friends very fully about what he had seen. He declared that the regions he saw went far beyond any parts of the Old World in animals, plants, and men, and that the climate of these regions was better than anything he had ever known.

The printing press spread this story of Americus. One day a professor of geography in what is now France proposed that this new region, which Americus described so fully, be called "Amerige." The suggestion was taken up, and after a short time that name was applied to the whole of the New World.

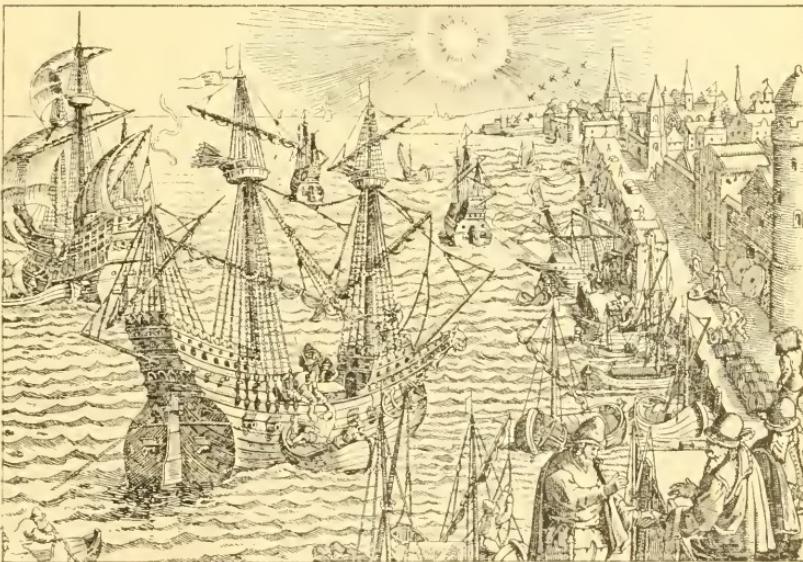
**107. Balboa Discovers the Pacific.** Spaniards were ransacking every corner of the New World in search of adventure. One of them, Vasco Nunez de Balboa, had gone on a trading expedition and settled in Santo Domingo, but he failed to make a success of his new venture. Burning to recover his lost fortune, he set out for the Isthmus of Panama. When he reached it the Indians pointed the way toward a mighty sea whose sands hid great stores of gold. The Indians had already learned how to get rid of Spaniards!

In September, 1513, Balboa and his men set out to cross the Isthmus to find this great body of water. Through forests so dense that the sun could not shine, they made their slow, toilsome way to the mountains. These they climbed amid great hardships. They reached

the top one day, and, far to the westward, Balboa saw the mighty sea. Stirred by the sight, he and his men climbed down the western slopes and in four days were standing on its shores. When the tide rose, Balboa drew his sword, rushed into its waters, and took possession in the name of the king and queen of Spain. He called it the South Sea, but afterwards it was named the Pacific.

By this adventure Balboa helped to convince Europe that Columbus had discovered a new world. It remained for Magellan to prove that India, or the Far East, might indeed be reached by sailing westward.

#### 108. Magellan Begins His Great Voyage (1519).



After an engraving by De Bry

A VIEW OF LISBON HARBOR, WITH THE SHIPPING AS IT WAS IN  
THE DAYS OF MAGELLAN

Though a Portuguese by birth, Magellan sailed under the flag of Spain. Five vessels composed his fleet. He

made direct for South America, where he found winter just beginning, although it was only Easter time!

Magellan's sailors wanted to return home, and rebelled openly, but he suppressed them. One ship was wrecked during the winter. When spring came in August, he sailed farther south along the coast of Patagonia and entered the strait now bearing his name. The crew of another ship rebelled, seized their captain, and sailed back to Spain. The other sailors begged Magellan to return also. "I will go on if we have to eat the leather off the ships' yards," was his famous reply.

He did sail on until he reached the quiet sea to which he gave the name Pacific. In November the three remaining ships boldly turned their prows toward India,

across the trackless ocean, which no man had ever sailed before. After long weeks their food supply gave out, and then Magellan's statement literally came true. The sailors did eat the leather from the ships' yards like hungry dogs.

Finally they reached the Philippine Islands, where Magellan lost his life in defending his sailors



FERDINAND MAGELLAN

*From the portrait designed and engraved by  
Ferdinand Selma in 1788*

from the natives. Sadly the remainder, now reduced to twenty men in a single vessel, made their slow way

across the Indian Ocean, around Africa, and home (1521).

Five vessels full of enthusiastic sailors began the voyage. Now but twenty half-starved men in one vessel, their leader gone, were left to tell the tale of that wonderful first voyage around the world. This voyage proved that Columbus was right in thinking the world round, and that "India" could be reached by sailing westward.

**109. Cortés Invades Mexico (1519).** While Magellan was making his great voyage across the Pacific, Hernando Cortés had found one of the richest cities in the world—Mexico. He took twelve ships, landed on the coast of what is now Mexico, and sent every ship to the bottom of the sea in order to keep his men from deserting.

Cortés, his men, and horses, too, were protected by great iron coats, and the men were armed with swords and guns. Besides, they had a few cannon, whose noise would strike terror to the hearts of the Indians, even if they did not kill many.

Day after day Cortés and his men marched inland from the coast, fighting terrible battles with the natives. The Indians in Mexico were called Aztecs. Being clad



HERNANDO CORTÉS

*From the portrait painted by Charles Wilson Peale, now in Independence Hall, Philadelphia*

in cotton clothes, with only bows and arrows for weapons and protected by leather shields, they were no match for the Spaniards, in their coats of mail.



After an old print in Gerolamo Barroni's  
*History of the New World*

**INDIAN SUN WORSHIPERS AND TEMPLE, PERU**

*The Inca's followers were sun worshipers.  
Many of their temples were as large as  
those of ancient Babylon, and  
much like them in form*

The Spaniards marched through the mountains passes, and a beautiful sight met their eyes. As far as human sight could carry, they beheld a charming valley filled with cities. These cities were built over lakes, where canals took the place of streets and canoes carried the people from place to place.

**110. A Wonderful Indian City.** Cortés hastened forward, following a great road which led to a wonderful Indian city. Several roads ran to its center, where, in a great square, stood a wonderful temple, whose top could be reached by one hundred and fourteen steps running around outside. Sixty thousand people lived in this city. Many stone buildings with flat roofs furnished homes for them. Frequently there were flower gardens on the housetops.

Cortés and his men were but a handful in this dense mass of people, who did not welcome them. They seized Montezuma, the Mexican king, and held him prisoner, hoping to keep the people quiet, but this act only made them angrier than ever. They fell upon Cortés' men

in such vast numbers that they killed half of them and their horses. Cortés commanded Montezuma to stand upon the roof of the Spanish fort and forbid his people to fight. But they showed their hostility by casting stones and shooting arrows until they struck down Montezuma, and he died in a few days, a broken-hearted man.

**III. The Conquest of the Aztecs.** Reënforced by soldiers from Cuba, Cortés went to battle again and finally, after two years, he was master of the city and of the Aztecs in the country around. But Cortés was more than a conqueror—he was a wise governor as well. He rebuilt the city and in many ways tried to make it better. He made the city of Mexico a center of Spanish civilization. For three hundred years the mines of Mexico poured a constant stream of gold and silver into the lap of Spain. Cortés spent a large part of the fortune which fell to his lot in trying to improve the country. But in spite of the renown and wealth he brought Spain, the King of that country permitted him to die neglected.

**III2. The Richest City in the World.** Francisco Pizarro, another Spaniard, was ambitious to do in South America what Cortés had done in Mexico. He lived in the little town of Panama, and made an expedition along the western coast of South America until he reached a town of two thousand houses built mostly of sun-dried bricks with flat tops like the houses in Mexico. He returned, taking with him many valuable figures made of gold and vases of gold and silver. He crossed the ocean and told his story to the King of Spain, who made Pizarro governor of all the lands he might conquer, and gave his leading men high titles.

Pizarro hastened home with the good news, fitted out his expedition, and with banners flying and hopes high in the hearts of his men, sailed for Peru. There they marched inland through beautiful fields of flowers and grain.

The men finally reached the foothills of the Andes Mountains. Up and up they climbed until they reached the higher regions,—where it was much colder than anywhere they had yet been. Over they rushed and down the eastern slopes, where a charming scene opened to their view. In a valley lay a city of ten thousand houses like those Cortés had already found in Mexico. Across the valley was the Inca, the ruler of the country, with his army.



FRANCISCO PIZARRO

*After an engraving to be found in the works of the great Spanish historian, Herrera*

**113. Pizarro Captures the Inca.** Hernando De Soto, a brave captain, was sent with a troop of cavalry to invite the Inca to visit Pizarro. When told of the number of his soldiers, Pizarro was troubled, but laid his plans in secret. The next day the Inca came with his hosts. The

nobles carried the Inca on a gold-bedecked throne. A cannon was fired. It was a signal. The Spaniards

rushed forth, and thousands of Indians fell, trying to save their king from the fury of the strangers. The Inca was a prisoner.

To obtain his freedom, so the story runs, he promised to fill the room in which he was a prisoner as high as he could reach with gold. Pizarro accepted the offer, and when he had the gold cruelly put the ruler to death.

**114. The Spaniards Find Untold Wealth.** The little Spanish army now marched to Cuzco, the capital of Peru. After days of hard fighting they came to the richest city in the world. No man had ever before found so much gold and silver. "Ten planks or bars of silver, each bar twenty feet in length, one foot in breadth and two inches thick," found in one place, showed the great riches to which Pizarro and his followers fell heir.

It was too much for them. They grew jealous, and quarreled. A ringleader was put to death, and his friends broke into Pizarro's palace and murdered him (1533).

And in the end the millions which Spain took from the mines of Peru did her little good.

**115. De Soto's Expedition.** Before De Soto's time came Ponce de Leon in Florida. He came to the New World searching vainly for the fountain of youth, and found Florida—a land of flowers as he called it (1513).



HERNANDO DE SOTO

*After an engraving to be found in the works of the great Spanish historian, Herrera*

Hernando De Soto had already won fame in Peru. The King of Spain made him governor of Cuba and Florida. He was longing to repeat in Florida what Pizarro had done in Peru, and hundreds of Spanish noblemen wanted to enlist under his banner. In 1539 De Soto, with nine vessels carrying many soldiers, twelve priests, six hundred horses, and a herd of swine, landed in Florida from Cuba.

De Soto spent his first winter on Apalachee Bay. In the spring he marched north to Georgia, hunting for a country that he had heard about, ruled by a woman. The mountains caused him to turn south as far as the village of Mavilla (Mobile). Here he suffered great losses at the hands of the Indians, but he refused to turn back or send for supplies and men.

**116. Discovery of the Mississippi.** De Soto found camp for his second winter in northern Mississippi. Here the Indians attacked him again. In the spring the Spaniards moved westward for many days, finally coming upon a great rushing stream—the Mississippi, the Indians called it (1541).

On barges, which their own hands had built, De Soto and his men crossed the broad bosom of the Mississippi. Through dense forests that almost hid the sun they marched for days and days together, but found no sign of great riches. They crossed what is now Arkansas, Oklahoma, and perhaps a part of Texas. The winter of 1642 was one of great hardship for all the men.

In the following spring, when they reached Mississippi, De Soto was tired, and broken in health. A fever seized the great leader, and in a few days he died. His companions sadly buried him at dead of night

beneath the waters of the mighty river he had discovered.

Once more the fearless leaders made a dash for the west in the hope of finding rich treasure. They were disappointed, and returned to spend another winter on the banks of the Mississippi. Only half the army was now alive. These men built boats, floated down the Mississippi to its mouth, and finally reached home.

De Soto's expedition discouraged further search in North America for wealth such as South America possessed, but it did extend Spanish claims to this great region.

**117. Coronado and the Seven Cities of Cibolo.** The Spaniards easily believed most of the stories the Indians told about wonderful cities and their riches. To the northward the Indians pointed to the Seven Cities of Cibolo.

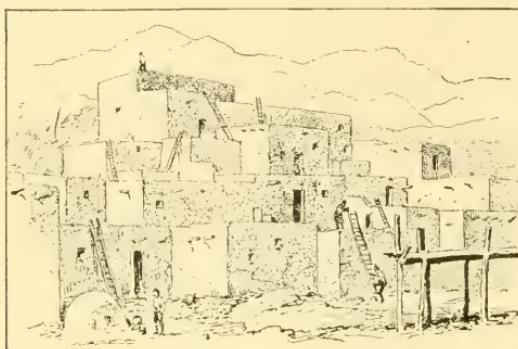
A missionary was sent with Indians to find these seven cities, supposed to contain great quantities of treasure. The missionary saw only one from a hill. He feared to go nearer, and returned with wonderful tales.

The excitement was great when the missionary's tales were told. The governor of Mexico prepared a large army and sent it forth under Coronado to conquer the cities. The army contained about three hundred of the sons of Spanish nobility. They wore coats of shining armor, carried lances and swords, and were mounted on the finest horses Mexico could furnish. Many negroes and Indians were taken along as servants to these sons of the nobility. Others went as herders to drive the oxen and to care for the cows which were to be killed as food for the warriors.

This army marched northward with high hopes.

The men entered southeastern Arizona, crossing mountains and valleys. They marched into New Mexico and

soon found the first one of the seven cities. It proved to be nothing but an Indian pueblo with its flat roofs. The houses were entered by ladders, and had very small windows, if



From a photograph

AN INDIAN PUEBLO OF ADOBE, OR SUN-DRIED BRICK

any. The people were poorly dressed. They raised a poor sort of corn, beans, and melons. They also made pottery and wore blankets, as they do now. These Indians were probably the Zunis of New Mexico.

**118. Discovery of the Grand Cañon.** In their search the army had divided. Some had gone to explore the Gulf of Upper California and others had found that wonder of wonders, the Grand Cañon. As they stood upon the plateau-like banks and looked far down into its mighty depths, a distance of over six thousand feet, or more than a mile, they saw the muddy Colorado rushing along. As they gazed upon this wonderful work of nature, they might have imagined they could see the gray walls of some giant castle, or the red stone of frowning forts built in that far-off time when the gods did battle.

Coronado spent his first winter not far from the present city of Albuquerque. He forced the Indians to give their houses to his men, and to furnish them with a supply of blankets.

**119. Discover Great Herds of Crooked-Back Oxen.**

A fresh story told of a wonderful city took Coronado and his men hundreds of miles to the northeast. For many days they pushed onward, crossing New Mexico, the Pan Handle of Texas, and a portion of Oklahoma into Kansas. Here they found, not a wonderful city, but great prairies with their vast oceans of waving grass. Upon these grassy prairies fed countless herds of buffalo — crooked-back oxen, the Spaniards called them.

They did see a new kind of Indian. He was more savage than those in the south, and lived in a kind of tent-like house made by skins fastened to poles.

**120. Meaning of Coronado's Expedition.** A year later, disappointed, with fortune gone, with many of his gay companions not returning, Coronado reported to the governor of Mexico and proved that these wonderful cities were not to be found. His report that this region was hardly fit for settlers we know to be false, and that there is little of gold or silver in it is not entirely true. They were there, but he did not find them. Coronado's and De Soto's expeditions convinced Spaniards that there was little hope of finding gold in the main parts of North America.

## OPPOSITION TO SLAVERY; THE FOUNDING OF MISSIONS

**121. Las Casas, the Enemy of Human Slavery.**

The Spanish grandes who led expeditions generally thought themselves above work. Hence they early made slaves of the Indians. But the Indians were not used to working all day long, either in the mines or in the broiling sun. They were accustomed to a great

deal more freedom than were even the Spaniards. The natural result was that the Indians, men and women, sickened and died.



LAS CASAS PRAYING FOR THE INDIANS

Among the Spaniards there was one man who set his face sternly against making slaves of the Indians. His name was Las Casas. He devoted his whole life to the Indians, so that

the Spanish monarchs called him their "Universal Protector." From the writings of Las Casas we see how hard was the lot of the Indians. "The main care was to send the men to work in the gold mines, and to send the women to . . . till the ground. . . . The men perished in the gold mines with hunger and [from hard] labor, the women perished in the fields. . . . As for the blows which they gave them with whips, cudgels, and their fists . . . I could be hardly able to make . . . narrations of those things. . . ."

Las Casas was a monk, a just man who loved his neighbor as himself. He tried to influence the Spaniards to do away with Indian slavery, but all in vain. He went to Spain and appealed to the monarch in person, but the high Spanish officers were not in sympathy with his ideas. He continued his battle for the Indian slaves as long as he lived, and had the government officials backed him up, as they should have done,

there would have been far less suffering among the red men.

The Spaniard had to have help to do his work on the great plantations in the West Indies, in Mexico, and in Central America. After the Indians proved unfit he sought the negroes in Africa. Spain became, in the sixteenth century (1500-1600), the greatest slave trader among the nations of Europe. It was easy, therefore, for the Spaniards in America to get all the black men they wanted.

**122. Missions from Peru to California.** The great majority of the Spaniards who came to America were bent upon filling their pockets with gold and upon finding adventures that would test the courage of a true knight. But among them were some who came for religion's sake. These sought out the natives and went among them as followers of the lowly Jesus, trying to teach them the simpler truths about God and the worship of him as a Supreme Being.



THE OLD SPANISH MISSION OF SANTA BARBARA

All this was hard to do. To aid the work, they set up a church and a school, called a "mission," among

the different tribes. They taught a few of the young people to read and write. To all of the Indians they sought to be examples of what a person should be and do. They taught, besides, that the tribes should live in peace with each other, and should engage in peaceful occupations instead of in war.

These mission communities were established from Peru to California. Their people were mostly farmers, herdsmen, and workers about the mission. In some villages of the more ambitious kind, the missionaries built schools. They taught the young Indian, or tried to teach him, habits of industry; how to work regularly and steadily at whatever he did. This was no easy task for the Indians, whose fathers and mothers, for generations, had followed the "happy-go-lucky" mode of getting a living.

Among the trades learned by the young Indians were the making of the clothes they wore, carpentry, so that they might construct their rude houses, preparing furniture for the home, shoemaking, herding cattle, and so on.

Long years before the first college in the English colonies was established (1636) the Spaniards in Peru and in Mexico had built colleges. They also led the way in setting up printing presses. But neither college nor printing press grew in importance as compared with those in the English colonies.

The natural result of mingling with the Indians was a closer friendship and fellowship. This closer friendship resulted in Spaniards and Indians marrying each other. In all South America and Mexico the great majority of the civilized people are of mixed Spanish and Indian blood.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. Why the New World was not named after Columbus. 2. How the printing press helped defeat Columbus. 3. Balboa, and the discovery of the Pacific. 4. Columbus thought the world round, and Magellan proved it. 5. Magellan sailed around South America into the Pacific Ocean, and across this new sea to the Philippine Islands, where he was killed. 6. His ship reached Spain—the first to sail around the world. 7. Cortés marched against a rich city, afterward called Mexico, captured the ruler and the city, and ruled it for several years. 8. Pizarro invaded Peru, the richest country of all America, and captured and put to death the ruler. 9. Pizarro died by the hand of a Spaniard.

**Study Questions.** 1. What are the reasons why the New World was named for Americus Vespucius? 2. Imagine you are Balboa trying to find the Pacific. 3. What was the meaning of Balboa's discovery? 4. What part of the problem of Columbus did Magellan solve? 5. Where is Patagonia, and how could there be signs of spring late in August? 6. What did Magellan's voyage prove, and what remained of Columbus' plans yet to accomplish? 7. Why did Cortés sink his ships? 8. How were Spaniards armed, and how were Indians armed? 9. Describe the city of Mexico. 10. Who began the war, and what does that show about the Spaniards? 11. How did the people and king treat Cortés? 12. How did the king reward Pizarro for what he was going to do? 13. What did Pizarro see in passing up and down the Andes? 14. Picture the Inca coming to visit Pizarro, and Pizarro's reception of him. 15. What pledge did the Inca make? 16. Tell the story of Pizarro's march to the capital. 17. Did Pizarro deserve his fate? 18. Why was De Soto's expedition so large at the beginning? 19. Was he wise or unwise in refusing to send for aid? 20. How often did he come back to the Mississippi? 21. Relate the story of Coronado. 22. What was Las Casas' occupation, and what did he do? 23. What was the purpose in establishing missions and schools?

**Suggested Readings.** MAGELLAN: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 161-185; Butterworth, *The Story of Magellan and the Discovery of the Philippines*, 52-143; Ober, *Ferdinand Magellan*, 108-244. CORTÉS: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186-225; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 101-126; Ober,

*Hernando Cortés, Conqueror of Mexico*, 24-292. PIZARRO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 12-16; Towle, *Young Folks' Heroes of History*, Vol. II: *Pizarro; His Adventures and Conquests*, 27-327.

## FRANCE AGAINST SPAIN IN EUROPE AND AMERICA

**123. French Explorations.** Francis I of France and Charles V of Spain were often fighting with each other over parts of Italy. These wars kept Spain from winning greater possessions in North America.

Another cause of the quarrel was the fact that the pope had drawn a north and south line dividing the non-Christian lands of the world between Spain and Portugal. Francis did not like this, for he was completely shut out. He demanded to know "by what right do they monopolize the earth? Did our first father Adam make them his sole heirs? If so, I should like to see a copy of that will; and until I do, I shall feel at liberty to seize all the land in the New World that I can get."

With this intention, Francis sent Verrazano, an Italian sea captain, to the New World to explore the country and prey upon the Spaniards. Verrazano sailed along the coast from the Carolinas to Maine, stopping, it is supposed, in the bay now called New York (1524). But he had gone too far north to meet the Spaniards.

But King Francis was too busy making war in Italy to bother with occupying any part of the region explored.

Francis had a great rival in Charles V, the King of Spain, who had been made Emperor of Germany, and ruler of Holland and Belgium, parts of Italy, Austria, and of the New World. These countries were so far apart that they could not all act together. If they had, Charles V might have beaten Francis.

Francis attacked Charles in the battle of Milan in Italy and won his claim to that city. His great victory was due to a wonderful knight called Chevalier Bayard, "the knight without fear and without reproach."

**124. The Story of Chevalier Bayard.** Many wonderful stories are told about Bayard. While yet a young man all the knights and ladies had been called together to witness knighthood conferred on him for bravery and skill in battle. He was chosen as one of the thirteen Frenchmen to do battle against a like number of Germans. The Frenchmen won. At one time, like Horatius of old, he held a bridge against two hundred Spaniards, and at another defended his fortress with only one thousand knights and soldiers against thirty-five thousand.

All men admired Bayard, so fine looking was he and so noble was his behavior toward the unfortunate whom the results of war placed in his hands. Twice Bayard was made a prisoner of war, but twice he was set free by his generous captors without a demand for ransom. Generosity begets generosity.

In one of the great wars between Francis and Charles



After De Neuville's drawing in Guizot's *History of France*  
CHEVALIER BAYARD AND THE DUKE OF BOURBON

the gallant Bayard received his death wound. He sat with his back propped against a tree. The Duke of

Bourbon, a great French general who had deserted the cause of his king, came up to Bayard and expressed the deepest sympathy with the noble knight. "Pity not me," said the hero. "I am dying as an honest man should die. I have rather reason to pity you, when I see you thus in arms against your king, your country, and your oath."

Bayard held the hilt of his sword before



JACQUES CARTIER

*From an engraving after the original portrait at Hotel de Ville, St. Malo, France*

his eyes, confessed his sins to a friend, and did not cease to pray until his death.

These wars in Europe so occupied the time of both kings that they had less opportunity to make settlements in America.

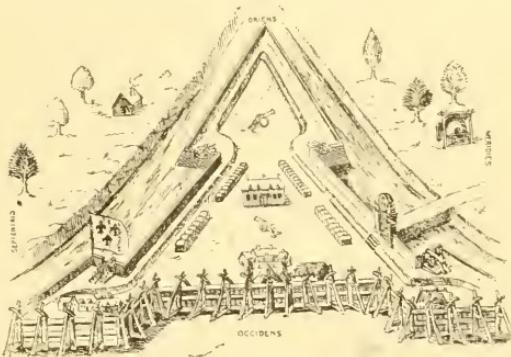
**125. The French Claim to North America.** Just ten years after Bayard's death (1534), Jacques Cartier, sailing from a port of France, reached the bleak shores of Newfoundland, lately become the fishing grounds of Europe. His frequent voyages gave France her claim to North America.

During one of these trips he discovered the St. Lawrence, built a fort where Quebec now stands, and spent the winter there. He made his way in rowboats for many miles up the river to a place which he named "Mont Real," now Montreal. Here he found the great rapids of the St. Lawrence barring his further progress. Cartier called them La Chine (China) rapids, for he believed that river was the pathway to China. During all his voyages to North America he kept in mind the idea that he might become famous, and his country, too, by discovering a northwest passage to the Far East. It was the dream of all sea captains sailing to America during the sixteenth century, that by some stroke of good fortune they might thus immortalize themselves.

But Canada was an ice-bound region compared with sunny, smiling France, and Cartier had lost a part of his crew from sickness caused by the cold weather. Frenchmen were not enthusiastic over Canada, for they had not yet learned that it was the greatest fur-bearing country in the world, consequently no permanent settlement was made.

### 126. Huguenot Colony in Florida.

More than a quarter of a century after this time, the followers of Calvin, called Huguenots among the French,



From Lemoyné in De Bry

#### FORT CAROLINE

*The site of this fort is in doubt, some historians placing it near St. John's Bluff, others at a place called Battle Bluff*

decided to plant a settlement in sunny Florida. Francis I was dead and religious wars had split the French people. Admiral Coligny, the great Huguenot leader, planned the colony in Florida as a home for the people of his own way of worship. In 1564 three ships laden with Huguenots and provisions sailed for Florida, and found a place for their colony at the mouth of the St. Johns River (Fort Caroline). But like the members of other first expeditions, many of the people were unfit to begin the hard work of making homes in the New World. Instead of clearing the ground and planting and tilling the soil, they spent the time seeking mines of gold and silver, and in hunting the Spaniards.

King Philip of Spain was angry when he heard of the doings of this body of "heretics." He immediately sent Menendez, a bold leader, to occupy Florida and attack the Frenchmen. Menendez planted his settlement and named it St. Augustine (1565). This settlement is famous as the first permanent one within the limits of the United States.

This done, Menendez started to find the Frenchmen, about fifty miles away. He spared the women and children, but many of the men he promptly put to death. King Philip's cruelty is clearly seen in the message he sent to Menendez: "Say to him that as to those he has killed he has done well; and as to those he has spared, they shall be set to labor in the galleys."

This was the end of the French Huguenot settlement in America, but in after years hundreds of Huguenots emigrated to America and settled in the various towns of the English colonies, especially in Charleston, Boston, and New York.

From the Huguenots came some of the bravest and most famous men in America.

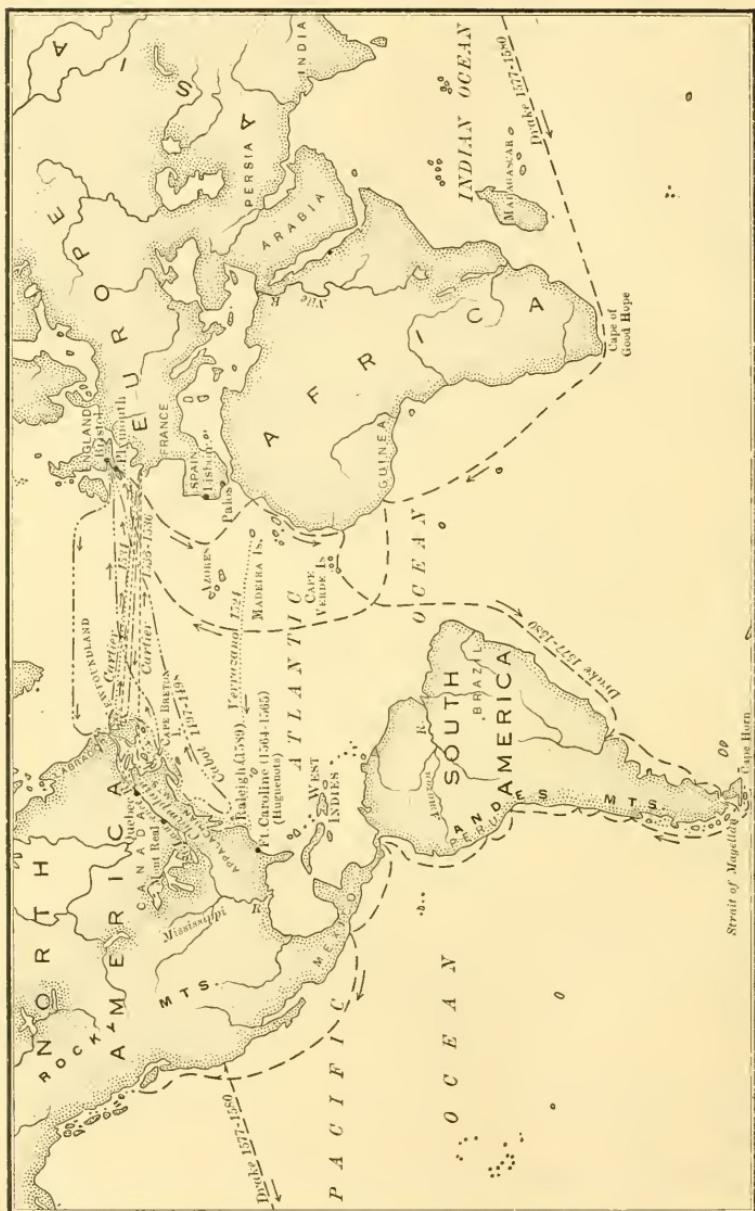
**127. Champlain Founds New France (1608).** Samuel de Champlain was a son of France, born of noble parents and bred to the life of a soldier. He laid the foundation of New France at Quebec. Wherever he went in America he made fast friends of the Indians, for he began to see the great stream of riches that the fur trade would turn into the lap of France.

He joined a war party of Algonquins going to attack the Iroquois, or Five Nations, living to the southward in what is now New York. They paddled their canoes up the mighty St. Lawrence, and on the Richelieu to a beautiful lake. What strange feelings he must have had as his canoe glided out upon the surface of a body of water far greater than any in his own beloved France!

One evening, near where the ruins of Ticonderoga now are, they beheld the war canoes of the hated Iroquois. The next day both parties drew up in battle array. The Algonquins opened their ranks, and Champlain stood forth. The Iroquois gazed in wonder upon the first European warrior they had ever seen. Champlain leveled his musket, and fired. Two chiefs fell. Another report rang through the woods, and the boldest warriors in North America fled in confusion.

There was great rejoicing among the Algonquins. This one battle made Champlain a hero. In the next few years he and the Algonquins frequently invaded the hunting grounds of the Iroquois, thus gaining their undying hatred for everything French.

Champlain lived in Canada many years, working for the good of his native land. He encouraged the



Copyright, 1915, by Rand McNally & Company

ROUTES OF FRENCH AND ENGLISH VOYAGERS TO AMERICA

missionaries, settled disputes between hostile tribes, fostered the fur trade, and urged the king to send out settlers for New France. Worn out with toil and travel, far away from kindred and native land, Champlain died at Quebec on Christmas Day, 1635.

**128. New France Solidly Built.** In after days the French king took a deeper interest in New France and began to build a chain of forts from the Gulf of Mexico up the Mississippi, to join those leading from the St. Lawrence. Thus, in spite of Spain, French power was so firmly planted in America that only a great war could break its hold.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

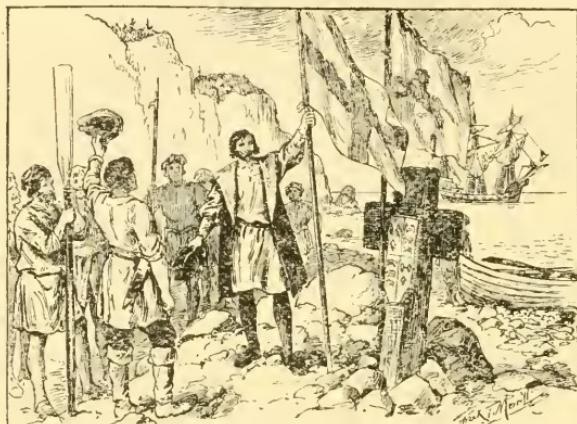
**The Leading Facts.** 1. Francis I of France and Charles V of Spain fight in Europe. 2. What Francis said about the pope's line. 3. The career of Bayard. 4. What Verrazano and Cartier did. 5. Coligny's colonists murdered by the Spaniards. 6. Huguenots settle in America. 7. Champlain founds New France, and treats with the Indians on the St. Lawrence. 8. Earns the hatred of the Iroquois by taking part in war against them. 9. Champlain, the Father of New France.

**Study Questions.** 1. How did Spain lose in America by her wars in Europe? 2. Tell what reason the pope could find for giving the greater portion of the New World to Spain, and explain the effect on other nations. 3. Tell the story of Bayard. 4. What great idea carried the French up the St. Lawrence? 5. What proof can you give that the King of Spain was pleased with what Menendez did? 6. Where among the English settlements did the Huguenots go? 7. Can you name any descendants of the Huguenots in America? 8. Who was Champlain? 9. Tell the story of his first battle with the Iroquois. 10. What did Champlain accomplish?

**Suggested Readings.** Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 269-280; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea, Stories of the Eastern States and of Ocean Explorers*, 1-34.

## ENGLAND THE RIVAL OF SPAIN IN EUROPE AND AMERICA

**129. John Cabot Seeks a Shorter Route to India and Finds North America.** When stingy old Henry VII



THE LANDING OF CABOT  
*Cabot setting up the flags of Venice and England in  
the western world*

realized the greatness of the discovery of Columbus, he was, no doubt, a bit sorry that he had refused him aid. But in the old seaport town of Bristol, England, lived many English

sailors. Among them was John Cabot, who was born in Columbus' own town and later had gone to Venice. But, after a great deal of experience on the Mediterranean, he finally settled in Bristol.

John Cabot agreed with Columbus that the world is round, and thought that he could make his name and fame by discovering a northwest passage to India. Only five years after Columbus reached the New World, Cabot made his trip to what is believed to be the present Cape Breton (1497).

We are not sure of the region, but somewhere on this bleak land he planted the flags of Venice and of England side by side, and took possession in the name of England.

In May, 1498, he set out again, with more sailors and a larger fleet, but the way to India did not open for Cabot. He turned southward, probably as far as North Carolina. On this discovery England laid claim to the whole of North America.

We have seen that Spain claimed the same region, but since her last expeditions under De Soto and Coronado had not turned out well, she looked to Mexico and Peru for gold and silver. England was slow. She did nothing more in America for nearly a hundred years.

**130. The Quarrel between the King of England and the King of Spain.** After Cabot failed to find a new way to India, King Henry VII did nothing more to help English discovery. His son, Henry VIII, got into a great quarrel with Charles V of Spain over getting a divorce from his wife, a niece of Charles. The pope took the side of Charles. Henry was too busy with this quarrel to think much about America.

The hatred of the two kings for each other was partly due to religion. On the continent of Europe and in England great changes in religious belief and practice were taking place. This period, with its new ideas and changes, is called the Reformation.



MARTIN LUTHER

*From an engraving of the portrait by Lucas Cranach  
in the German National Museum,  
Nuremberg*

**131. The Great Leaders in the Conflict.** The chief centers of the Reformation were among German-speaking peoples. There were two great leaders of this revolt, Luther and Calvin. Luther, the more aggressive leader, was a professor in the University of Wittenburg. He defied the pope, and was declared a heretic. Finally he and other leaders split the church into Protestants and Roman Catholics. The Protestants following Luther were called Lutherans. Large numbers of them emigrated to America in the early colonial period.

Calvin, born in France, lived as a student in Paris, but was forced to flee, and found safety in Geneva, Switzerland.

The greater number of Protestants who followed his teachings lived in France and were called Huguenots. We have already seen Admiral Coligny trying to make a settlement for them in Florida. Calvin's followers in Germany were generally called Calvinists; in England they were called Presbyterians.

Among the leaders of the Roman Catholic Church at the time of the Reformation was Loyola,



REGINALD POLE

*From an engraving after the painting by Sebastian del Piombo, now in the Hermitage, Petrograd*

a Spaniard and a soldier. He received a wound which

turned his mind to religion, and he resolved to be a missionary. He became the founder of the order of the Society of Jesus, called the Jesuits.

In England, another Catholic who spent his life in defense of the papacy was Reginald Pole. He was made cardinal by the pope, whom he aided against Henry VIII, and rose to be Archbishop of Canterbury in the reign of Queen Mary.

### **132. Henry VIII Becomes Head of the English Church.**

Henry, King of England, in his double quarrel with the King of Spain and the pope, brought about the separation of the English Church and the Roman. Still there were Roman Catholics faithful to the pope and their early teachings. Others belonged to the English Church, of which the king had been declared the head by the English Parliament.

Many Englishmen went to join Luther, Calvin, and other leaders of the religious revolt. Many more left England when Mary, a Roman Catholic, became queen (1553).

The succession of Elizabeth to the throne of England was the signal for the return of these Englishmen. They came back, filled with enthusiasm for the new ideas.



JOHN CALVIN

*From an engraving after the original painting, by an unknown artist, in the library at Geneva*

Many of these people did not agree in their religious views either with the Catholics or with the Church of England, and they were called Puritans. The discussions and debates over religious questions divided the English Church into Puritans and Episcopalians, as they were later called.

The Puritans, ambitious to change the ways of worship still further, separated into two great bodies, the Congregationalists and the Presbyterians. The Congregationalists, driven by persecution, sought homes in New England, where twenty-five thousand settled between 1620 and 1640. Large numbers of Presbyterians came into the mountainous regions of Virginia and Pennsylvania, besides locating in other colonies.

Roman Catholics settled mostly in Maryland. Many thousands belonging to the English Church occupied the southern colonies.

**133. Elizabeth's Plans, and the Puritans.** When Elizabeth mounted the throne (1558) she had one great purpose,—to lift England from its lowly position to the first place among the nations of the



ST. IGNATIUS OF LOYOLA

From an engraving after a lithograph made by Barry  
from the painting by E. Lafon

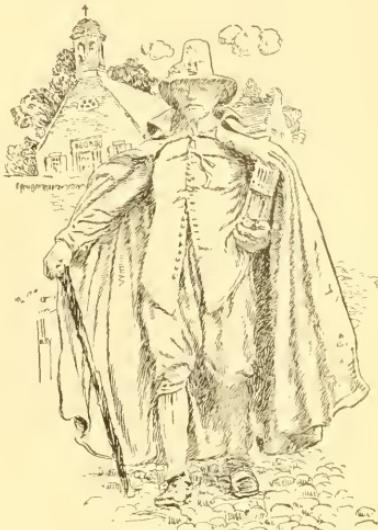
world. But Englishmen were divided in regard to religious views. The Puritans gave Elizabeth a great deal of

trouble and made the nations on the continent of Europe feel that Englishmen were not loyal to their queen.

But she won everybody to her side, the Puritans included, except people of extreme views, by appealing to all Englishmen to stand by her against the enemies of England. The people, discovering a plot to kill Elizabeth, were aroused to the highest pitch of indignation. Englishmen signed a mighty oath to put to death anybody trying to kill the queen.

Elizabeth was said to be haughty to her courtiers but tenderly sympathetic to the "common people." She was called vain, and had a great fondness for fine clothes and jewels. She loved to appear in public surrounded by her nobles and ladies, richly dressed. It is even said that she loved flattery, but through it all she was believed to be so devoted to her country and its people that she received the title of "Good Queen Bess."

During Elizabeth's long reign the country prospered and the people adopted more modern ways of living. The old feudal castle, no longer needed for defense, gave way to the Elizabethan palace, decorated with pictures and tapestries. Grace and beauty in furniture became the rule. Luxuries of an earlier day rapidly became necessities.



After the statue by St. Gaudens  
A PURITAN MINISTER

**134. Elizabeth and Mary, Queen of Scots.** Elizabeth, however, had two powerful enemies—the pope and the King of Spain. The pope had refused to call her the rightful Queen of England because she had persecuted Roman Catholics for religion's sake, and because the beautiful and fascinating Mary, Queen of Scots, put forth her claim to the queenship of England. Mary had appealed to the pope and the King of Spain for aid against Elizabeth.

Spain had become the most powerful Roman Catholic nation in Europe. Her king could call to his aid the largest armies and the mightiest navies in the world.

Unfortunately, Mary had been driven into England by a dangerous uprising against her among the Scots. Elizabeth threw her into prison, where she was kept for over eighteen years.

Two such masterful women could not be near each other without trouble. Mary was beautiful and winning, and had powerful friends in England and on the Continent. Elizabeth was a woman of great energy and ability and had raised England from a weak to a powerful nation. As



INTERIOR OF MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS' BEDROOM  
IN HOLYROOD CASTLE

Roman Catholics looked to Spain as their leader, so Protestants all over Europe looked upon England as the champion of their cause.

Plot after plot against the life of Elizabeth pointed to Mary, but Mary denied the charges. Englishmen in high places called for her trial. Finally she was tried, declared guilty, and died like a martyr.

All Europe shuddered at the news of Mary's execution, and King Philip of Spain

summoned his army and navy for the invasion of England to avenge her death. We shall presently see how this Great Armada, as it was called, met defeat at the hands of Englishmen.

**135. The Revolt of the Netherlands.** Another cause that hindered Spain in getting a hold in North America was the loss of millions in money and thousands of men in trying to crush the revolt in the Netherlands, or Low Countries. This region differs from other countries in many ways. It lies on both banks of the lower part of the great German river, the Rhine. Much of the land is low; indeed, below the level of the sea. The angry waves from the North Sea are kept out by great embankments, many feet high, called dikes. All along the seashore,



From an old engraving  
**PHILIP II OF SPAIN**

and on each side of rivers, they stretch for miles. It is a great pleasure to walk or ride from Amsterdam to the sea.



ALONG THE DIKES OF  
HOLLAND

The country is now divided into Holland on the north and Belgium on the south. The Hollanders, or Dutch people, speak a language

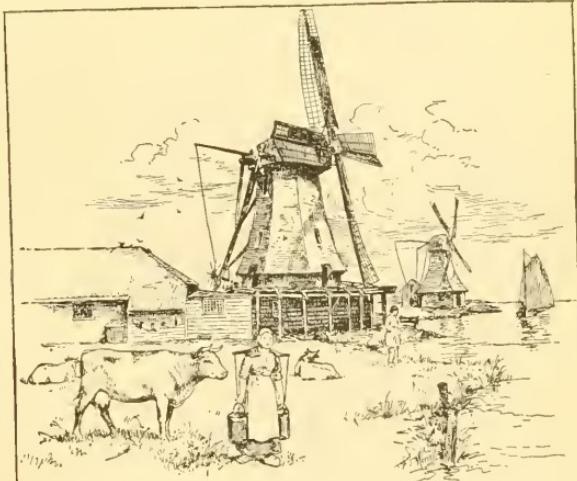
akin to the Germans. The Belgians mostly use the French language. Hollanders are generally Protestants and the Belgians, Roman Catholics. The Hollanders of that time (1550-1650) were fishermen, farmers, and dairymen, and were noted as great traders. The Belgians were largely engaged in weaving and in manufacturing. Both countries sent their goods to all parts of Europe and to the rest of the world. They were growing rich, for they were better traders than the Spaniards, and were winning the trade of India away from the Portuguese.

In that age countries passed from one king or queen to another, much the same as property now passes from one person to another. We have already seen that the rich region of the Netherlands fell to Charles V of Spain and later to his son Philip when he became the king of that country.

King Philip appointed rulers over the Netherlands, which the people called oppressive, and backed them up with soldiers. The people, rose in riots and destroyed

property right and left. Then the king sent the Duke of Alva, the man whose very name makes the Hollander of to-day shudder as he reads the story of his cruelty to the Dutch. With ten thousand soldiers, aided by his "Council of Blood," he punished Protestants and Catholics alike when they did not submit to his authority. Thousands were burned, hanged, beheaded, or met a worse fate. He taxed the people without mercy until their business was at a standstill.

**136. William the Silent.** We can hardly see how the Dutch could have won against Spain had not a great and noble man, William the Silent, undertaken to lead the armies of Holland. He is called "The Silent" because he knew when not to speak. He took charge of the Dutch army (1568). The Spanish soldiers at first despised William's soldiers and sailors and called them "Beggars." They were farmers, laborers, and sailors, but their leader was a master. William inspired them with his own grim resolution to fight



From photograph and original sketches made in Holland.  
A SCENE IN HOLLAND

Spain until she acknowledged the Netherlands a free land.

At first Spain could easily beat William's soldiers,

but, led by William, they were always ready to fight again. In this same way Washington won the American Revolution. Finally the Dutch captured and fortified a leading town. Many other towns came to their aid. They elected William their ruler.

Alva recaptured some of the towns, and put to death even the women and children. This was terrible. But Alva did not yet know the spirit of the Dutch. Instead of stamping out rebellion, his cruelty only caused it to spread. The Belgians now came to the help of the Hollanders, and there was great fighting indeed.

Spain was finally driven to make friends with the

Catholic part of the people. William and the Hollanders, now left to fight alone, formed the "Union of Utrecht" (1579). Out of this union came a declaration of independence (1581). How courageous was this little Dutch nation thus to throw off the authority of the mighty kingdom of Spain! With the riches of Mexico and Peru pouring into her treasury, her



WILLIAM THE SILENT

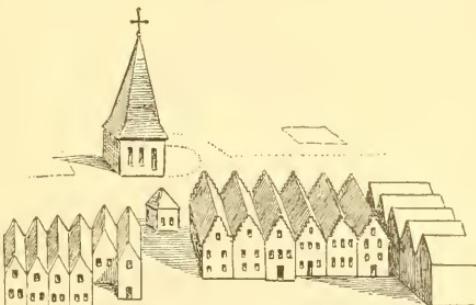
*From an engraving after the original portrait  
by Adriaen Key*

kings had been the leading men in Europe for over half a century. Bold, brave Dutchmen, to defy her power!

In spite of Dutch courage the Spaniards poured thousands of soldiers into the country and finally captured most of its towns. But the city of Leiden was hardest of all to take. It was located not many miles from the sea, where great dikes threw their arms around it to keep back the ocean waves. Its great walls frowned down upon the Spaniards. Only a few soldiers were in the town to defend it, but the citizens boldly came forward to fight. The Spaniards could not take it by storm, so they waited until that grim monster, starvation, should force the Dutch to surrender. For six weeks bread could not be had, and people died by the hundreds, but still no surrender.

William decided upon a desperate remedy. He opened the dikes! In rushed the mighty ocean waves, hungry for the lives of human beings, for the dikes had held them back so long! Hundreds of Spanish soldiers were drowned. William's fleet, with two hundred vessels laden with food and fresh troops, was ready for action. The Spanish were defeated. To honor the courage of the brave people of Leiden the government of Holland built in Leiden a great university where, in the next century, many Englishmen studied. Some of these men aided in laying the foundations of New England.

The King of Spain resolved to put an end to the war



From print in Winsor's *Narrative History of United States*

THE OLD CITY OF LEIDEN

by the murder of William the Silent. The king offered a reward for this deed, and William fell in 1584, a victim of Spanish hate. The Dutch have never forgotten the heroic deeds of William the Silent.



SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

*From an engraving after a portrait by Sir Antonis van Moor, now in the collection of the Duke of Bedford*

Long before William's death the noble struggle of the Dutch stirred the people of England. London merchants had already sent half a million in money to aid them. Dutch war vessels found protection in English ports, and English ships ran up the Dutch flag in making attacks on Spanish

ships. But it was not until late in the war that Elizabeth sent soldiers to fight for Dutch freedom—five thousand in all. Many noble Englishmen went to the aid of the Netherlands, but of them all none was more famous than the poet, Sir Philip Sidney. As he lay dying after a battle, a drink of water was offered to quench his thirst. He turned with a smile to a wounded comrade near by, and said, "Take it. Thy necessity is greater than mine." One cause for the fitting out of the Great Armada later by Spain was the help Elizabeth gave the Dutch.

**137. Close of the Thirty Years' War.** But it was not until 1609 that Spain made peace with the Dutch; and not until the Treaty of Westphalia, which the nations made at the close of the Thirty Years' War, that Spain recognized the independence of Holland (1648).

In the same year that Spain made peace with Holland (1609) a Dutch vessel, the famous *Half-Moon*, with Henry Hudson as captain sailed up the river now-known as the Hudson. Therefore the year 1609 marked the peace between Holland and Spain and the beginning of the Dutch colony of New Netherland which later became New York.

Thus it was that the King of Spain for nearly one hundred years found himself fighting first one nation and then another—France, England, or Holland. Although Spain was made wealthy by gold and silver from Mexico and Peru, the wars which she kept up were a constant drain upon her, using up the lives of her sons and exhausting the supply of gold that flowed in from the New World.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. John Cabot, trying to find a short route to India, discovered what is supposed to be Labrador, or Cape Breton. 2. On a second voyage he coasted along eastern North America, as far south as the Carolinas. 3. Later, England claimed all North America. 4. Henry VIII quarreled with the King of Spain and the Pope of Rome. 5. The Reformation led to division of people on the basis of difference in religion. 6. Catholic and Protestant leaders. 7. The rise of the Puritans. 8. Elizabeth won support by appealing to the patriotism of all classes. 9. Englishmen took an oath. 10. Mary, Queen of Scots, her rival. 11. Elizabeth had Mary put to death because she believed her the center of plots to obtain the English throne. 12. The Great Armada, fitted out to punish

Elizabeth, brought gradual decay of Spain. 13. The nations that checked the growth of Spain northward in North America. 14. The difference between Holland and other nations. 15. The origin of the conflict in the Netherlands. 16. William the Silent and the "Beggars of the Sea." 17. William and Washington compared. 18. Catholics of Netherlands driven to side with William. 19. The Union of Utrecht. 20. The siege of Leiden. 21. The assassination of William. 22. Elizabeth sent soldiers to aid the Dutch. 23. Spain recognized the independence of Holland, and the Dutch planted the colony of New Netherland.

**Study Questions.** 1. Tell the story of John Cabot before he came to England. 2. What did Cabot want to find, and what did he find? 3. Why was little attention given to the new lands? 4. Why did Henry VIII think little of America? 5. Who were the great leaders, and what great changes took place during the Reformation? 6. Where did each sect settle in America? 7. What difficult problem did Elizabeth face, and how did she win the majority of her people? 8. Who was Mary, Queen of Scots? 9. What were the causes of her death? 10. How did the pope and the King of Spain take revenge? 11. How is the Netherlands protected from the sea? 12. How does Holland differ from Belgium? 13. How did Spain come to rule the Netherlands, and what made the Netherlands revolt? 14. How could the Netherlands hold out against Spain? 15. Why did the Catholics join the Protestants? 16. Who made the Union of Utrecht? 17. What does the siege of Leiden prove? 18. What desperate means did Spain finally use to get rid of William the Silent? 19. As soon as the Netherlands won their independence, what did they do of interest to the people of the United States? 20. Show how Spain, in spite of the riches of Mexico and Peru, used all her wealth in her wars.

**Suggested Readings.** CABOT: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 7-8; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 105-111; ELIZABETH: Guerber, *The Story of the English*, 233-243; Church, *Stories of English History*, 370-394; Abbott, *History of Queen Elizabeth*, 120-220; Tappan, *In the Days of Queen Elizabeth*, 95-262; Brooks, *Historic Girls*, 174-191; WILLIAM THE SILENT: Upton, *William of Orange*; Dawson, *Stories from Dutch History*, 104-218; MacGregor, *Romance of History: Netherlands*, 242-273; Griffis, *Brave Little Holland and What She Has Taught Us*, 139-200.

## HOW THE ENGLISH SEA DOGS FOUGHT THE SPANISH SAILORS AND ROBBED THE SPANISH TREASURE SHIPS

**138. The Beginnings of Trouble.** When the English soldiers and sailors came back from fighting in Holland, they told their queen and people horrible tales of Spanish cruelty. Likewise, the sailors from the New World told how the Spanish had captured English sailors and had burned them at the stake.

These stories set the British seamen on fire for revenge. King Philip of Spain sent threats of what he would do, but no attention was given them while English sailors felt that their fellows were flung into Spanish dungeons "laden with irons, without sight of sun or moon."

**139. Sir Francis Drake.** The most famous of the sea captains who came to the help of England against Spain was Sir Francis Drake. He had served many years under a kinsman, a daring sailor, Sir John Hawkins, a slave trader and a member of Parliament. Drake was serving under Hawkins, when he lost all, except his honor and his courage, in a sea fight.

The queen gave Sir Francis Drake command of a vessel, and in company with two other ships he captured a



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

*From the original portrait attributed to Sir Antonis van Moor, in the possession of Viscount Dillon, at Ditchly Park, England*

Spanish town on the Isthmus of Panama, and from the top of a tree beheld the blue waters of the Pacific. He resolved to sail its waters some day.

So pleased was Queen Elizabeth with the way in which Drake made use of the Spanish wealth he had obtained, that she gave him the money for his new expedition against the Spaniards. There was great excitement in England when it became known that Drake was to go in search of Spanish treasure ships in the Pacific.

**140. The First Englishman to Circumnavigate the Globe.** With four ships Drake made direct for the Strait of Magellan. He lost two of the ships, and one returned home, but Drake kept on in the *Pelican*. On the western coast of South America he spied the treasure ships, gave chase, and soon overtook them with his smaller and fleeter boat. He loaded her to his heart's content with the gold, silver, and precious stones which the Spaniards had gathered from the mines of Peru.

Drake was wise. He sailed north to the coast of what is now California, spent the winter there repairing



SIR JOHN HAWKINS  
*From a print after an old engraving*

his vessel, resting, and searching for a northwest passage to the Atlantic. He knew the Spaniards were waiting his return, so he turned the prow of the *Pelican* to the westward, sailed through the Indian Ocean, and reached home in a little less than three years (1580).

Drake had circumnavigated the world—the first Englishman to do it—and had brought great wealth home to England. Queen Elizabeth went on board his ship, with lords and ladies, conferred knighthood upon Drake, and renamed his ship *The Golden Hind*.

When the story of the doings of Drake was told King Philip he was angry indeed, and resolved to strike a counter blow that England would have good cause to remember; not only a blow for Drake's acts, but in revenge for the execution of Mary,



QUEEN ELIZABETH KNIGHTING SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

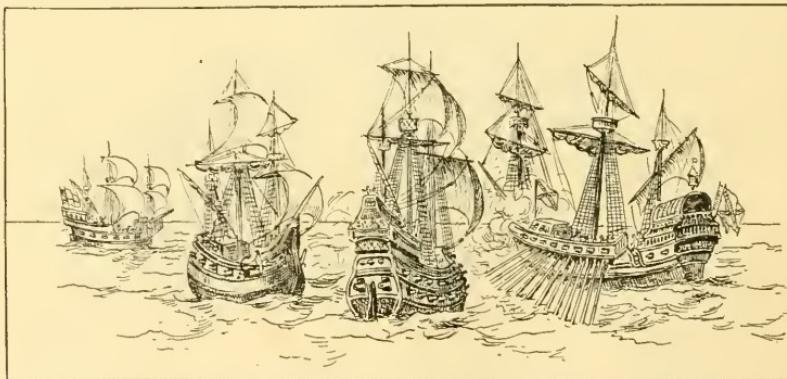
Queen of Scots, which had just taken place in the Tower.

141. "Singeing the Spanish King's Beard." The

King of Spain had been working hard for three years. All Spain was busy with preparations. Something must be done, and that quickly. Elizabeth sent Drake with thirty small vessels to make an attack. He reached Cadiz, sailed right into the harbor, burned store ships and ships for carrying troops, and escaped without harm. It took the King of Spain another year to get ready!

**142. The Coming of the Great Armada (1588).** If Philip was angry before, he was furious now. He made greater preparation than ever. But the people of England were ready, too. The national enthusiasm was raised to the highest pitch, and Catholics as well as Protestants joined the army and navy to defend "Good Queen Bess."

When the news came that the Spanish fleet had entered the English Channel, signal fires burned from every hilltop along the coast. The story is told that Lord Howard, Sir Francis Drake, and other English sea captains were busy on shore with a game of "bowls"



SHIPS OF THE SPANISH ARMADA

*From the original tapestry in the House of Parliament, London, burned in 1834.*

when the alarming news reached them. Howard was in favor of putting to sea at once. But Drake replied:

"There's plenty of time to win this game, and thrash the Spaniards, too."

The English ships were fewer in number than the Spanish, but were better built, faster sailers, and manned by more skillful sailors and experienced captains. The Englishmen, too, were better marksmen than the Spaniards.

**143. A Great Sea Fight.** There were thousands of soldiers on board the Spanish ships, with which to invade England. Up the Channel the mighty fleet came, past the English town of Plymouth, where the game of bowls was being played. Now the English sailors "cleared the decks" of their swifter warships, dashed in, and pounced upon one Spanish vessel at a time. In this wise they chased the Armada into the French port of Calais.

The Spaniards were hoping to carry still other soldiers from the Netherlands, where they had been fighting the Dutch, to the invasion of England, but they soon had other things to think of, for the English sent "fire ships" drifting among the vessels of the Armada.

When the Spaniards saw certain destruction floating down upon them they lifted their anchors and sailed out to sea again, where the English could get at them. Hard fighting followed, and the Armada sought to escape by sailing around to the north of Scotland and Ireland, but terrible storms overtook them. Scores were dashed to pieces and thousands of sailors and soldiers lost their lives. In a walk of five miles along the Irish coast an Englishman reported that he had counted more than a thousand dead Spaniards.

**144. A Crushing Defeat.** After the defeat of the Great Armada all Spain was in mourning, for almost every noble family lost a son. King Philip tried to excuse his

great sea captain who commanded the fleet, by saying, "I sent you to fight against men, and not with the winds."



SIR WALTER RALEIGH AND QUEEN ELIZABETH

*This incident, through which Sir Walter Raleigh found favor with the queen, is said to have taken place at Greenwich as the queen was on her way to the boat landing*

In the minds of the English, Drake, Howard, and the other ship commanders were great heroes. The power of Spain was broken. Gradually, on land and sea, her forces grew feebler, until she gave

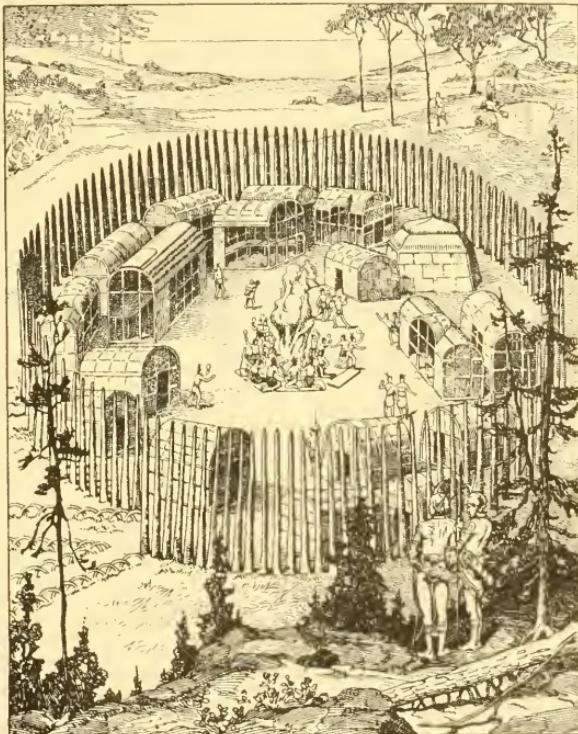
up her position as leader in Europe. In the Spanish-American War Spain lost her last great possessions in the West and East Indies to the United States.

**145. How Sir Walter Raleigh Won the Queen's Favor.** One of the bravest men who fought for the glory of England against the Spanish Armada was Sir Walter Raleigh. He had joined the English forces sent to help William the Silent, and had seen service in Ireland. At thirty years of age he was striking in his looks, tall, straight, and handsome. He was a polished man, full of wit and humor.

One day Raleigh stood aside with the crowd which always gathered to see the queen and her fine lords and ladies go by. The queen hesitated at a muddy place. In a moment Raleigh had thrown his red plush coat down

for the queen and her ladies to step upon. Raleigh's reward was a nod and a smile from her gracious Majesty. From now on he was a great favorite at court.

**146. Raleigh Tries to Plant Colonies in America.** Raleigh found the planting of colonies a better way of opposing the power of Spain in America than robbing treasure ships or burning her cities. He had accompanied his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, on two voyages to America. Gilbert was the first Englishman to attempt to plant a colony in the New World. His efforts had failed because the people who went with him were mainly adventurers who had no desire to settle down to the hard task of developing a new country. They wanted gold mines which would quickly transform them into rich



THE INDIAN TOWN OF POMEIOOC, VIRGINIA

*From an engraving by De Bry after a drawing made by Governor John White, sent out to Virginia by Sir Walter Raleigh in 1585*

men, so that they might return to England and live the lives of gentlemen. Gilbert himself was a noble man and had great faith in the future colonization of America. Compelled to abandon his plans, he sailed for home, but his boat was wrecked in a heavy storm and all on board perished. Raleigh, who strongly believed in the colonization plan, now obtained permission from the queen, and immediately sent Amidas and Barlow to the New World. They brought back such charming stories of land, climate, and Indians that Elizabeth gave the region from Maine to Mexico the name Virginia in honor of her own virgin life.

Raleigh immediately sent out a fleet under Ralph Lane as governor (1584), but instead of working to raise a supply of food, they spent the time searching for gold and silver. Sir Francis Drake, returning from the West Indies, brought the colonists back to England. But this colony did some good in the world: it carried to England the tobacco plant—which afterwards became the basis of Virginia's prosperity—and the white potato, which has been worth more to the world than all the gold found by Cortés and Pizarro.

A second colony of one hundred and fifty men and women was sent. John White, the governor, had to return to England for supplies. But at that time all England was rising to meet the Armada. Men were needed at home, and it was almost three years before he sailed back, to find the colony gone, no one knew where. Raleigh searched in vain for his lost colony.

Raleigh's purse was not equal to his courage. His money was soon gone. No one man had enough to found a settlement, and finally when Virginia was settled it was done by a great chartered company. But Raleigh

declared that he would live to see the day when Virginia would be a nation. He did live to see the day when a vessel, carrying the products of Virginia, had sailed into an English port, and an Indian princess, Pocahontas, had married an Englishman and had been received by the king and queen of England.

**147. The Meaning of the Battle with Spain.** For nearly one hundred years France, Holland, and England had been battling with the Spaniard. Sometimes it was a trial at arms on the battlefields of Europe, at other times a conflict between sailors for the control of the seas. But every war that was fought meant the gradual but growing weakness of Spain. By the time Jamestown (1607) and Plymouth (1620) were settled, English sailors felt that in courage and skill they were more than a match for the sailors of Spain.

After Virginia had been settled over half a century, some English noblemen settled the Carolinas. Spain looked upon this movement as threatening her colonies in Florida, and retaliated by attacking the Carolinas. In the course of time Englishmen demanded that the colony of Georgia be planted as an outpost against the Spaniards. A great man in England combined a plan of settling Georgia with men imprisoned for debt, with the scheme of making the colony a bulwark against Spain. Fredericka, a place in southern Georgia, was soon fortified and bravely withstood all attacks of the Spaniards.

**148. France and England Fight for Control.** We saw the Dutch plant the colony of New Netherland. A number of Dutch governors ruled it, but in 1664 it came, by conquest, into the hands of the English. Thus England had a continuous line of colonies from Maine to Georgia.

The French were pushing their claims to the St. Lawrence region. The fur trader and the missionary were steadily making their way westward to the Mississippi. A little later the French began to move from the Gulf of Mexico up the Mississippi. By 1750 France had a complete chain of forts from gulf to gulf, joining the St. Lawrence, the Great Lakes, and the Mississippi.

England took alarm. The wars of King William, Queen Anne, and King George were only skirmishes compared to the great French and Indian War (1752-1763). But France was beaten and England ruled North America east of the Mississippi River.

It does not require a big stretch of the imagination to see the Spanish-American War (1898) as the dying effort of Spain to retain control of her colonies in the West Indies and in the Philippines. Once Europe bowed to her might in war, and in America she seemed in a fair way to swallow up the best parts of the New World, but in our day she ranks among the smaller nations of the world. Thousands of her best men, millions upon millions of money, and millions of square miles of the richest land the sun ever shone upon, Spain wasted in war. War has its lessons, but Spain was too slow to learn.

#### SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

**The Leading Facts.** 1. Drake hated the Spaniards. 2. He sailed to the Pacific in the *Pelican* and then turned northward after the Spanish gold ships. 3. He wintered in California, and then started across the Pacific, the first Englishman to sail around the world. 4. Drake reached England, and was received with great joy. 5. Once more Drake went to fight Spaniards, until the Great Armada attacked England. 6. The size and purpose of the Armada. 7. Prove that Drake was not alarmed. 8. How the English beat the Armada. 9. A

battle between the Teuton and Latin. 10. Walter Raleigh, a soldier, won the favor of the queen. 11. He hated the Spaniards, and planted settlements in what is now North Carolina. 12. Raleigh's prophecy. 13. Final result of Raleigh's efforts to settle America. 14. The struggle with France.

**Study Questions.** 1. What reason had the Spaniards for thinking Drake a dragon? 2. Tell the story of Drake's circumnavigation. 3. How did Queen Elizabeth reward him? 4. Why did Drake sail into the port of Cadiz and "singe the king's beard"? 5. Where is Cadiz? 6. Explain the double purpose of the Armada. 7. How did the Spaniards expect to get soldiers in the Netherlands? 8. How did the English beat the Spaniards? 9. How did the defeat of the Armada injure Spain and help England, France, and the Netherlands? 10. What experiences did Raleigh have before he was thirty years old? 11. Make a picture of the cloak episode. 12. How did Raleigh plan to check the power of Spain? 13. What did the colonists take home with them? 14. What was the reason for the failure of Raleigh's last settlement in America? 15. Tell about the final struggle between France and England.

**Suggested Readings.** DRAKE: Hart, *Source Book of American History*, 9-11; Hale, *Stories of Discovery*, 86-106; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters from Drake to Farragut*. THE ARMADA: Warren, *Stories from English History*, 234-241; Bacon, *The Boy's Drake*, 3-470; Church, *Stories from English History*, 244-260. RALEIGH: Hart and Hazard, *Colonial Children*, 166-170; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 254-258; Higginson, *Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, 177-200; Bolton, *Famous Voyagers*, 154-234; Blaisdell, *Stories from English History*, 112-124.

# THE INDEX

(The references are to pages in the text of the book)

- ACHILLES, 33, 34.  
Acre, siege at, 230.  
Acropolis, 58, 60.  
Adrianople, 133.  
Adriatic Sea, 76, 241.  
Africa, 5, 7, 14, 224, 252; cities of ancient, 85; Greeks in, 27.  
Agamemnon, 33, 34.  
Agriculture, see Farming.  
Ajax, 33.  
Alaric, 140.  
Alcuin, 155.  
Alemanni, 147.  
Alesia, 07.  
Alexander the Great, 65-69; carries Greek ideas into Asia, 67-69; death of, 69; end of empire of, 69; portrait, 66; youth, 65-67.  
Alexandria, 28, 69, 70; geographers of, 72-73; Pharos or lighthouse, 70; scholars of, 72-73.  
Alexandrine Library, 70.  
Alfred the Great, 162-167; and the Danes, 162-166; childhood of, 163-164; establishes schools, 166; rule of, 166-167; statue of, 167.  
Algonquins, Champlain and the, 288.  
Alhambra, palace of the, 225, 240.  
Alphabets, 248; Greek, Phoenician, Roman, 23.  
Alps, 76, 211; Hannibal crosses the, 86-87.  
Alva, Duke of, 299, 300.  
Amiens, cathedral of, 216.  
America, origin of name, 265-266.  
America (North), 9, 10; Columbus discovers, 257-261; Columbus' later voyages to, 262; England and Spain rivals in, 290-303; France and England fight for control in, 313-314; France and Spain fight for control in, 282-289; honors Columbus in Columbian Exposition, 262; Leif Ericson discovers, 263; Raleigh tries to plant colonies in, 311-312.  
America (South), 9.  
"Amerige," 266.  
Amidas, 312.  
Amphitheaters, 111.  
Amsterdam, 243.  
Andes Mountains, Pizarro and his men reach, 272.  
Angle-Land, 136, 144.  
Angles, 136. See also Anglo-Saxons.  
Anglo-Saxons, 141-144, 162, 168; in Britain, 143-144.  
Antioch, Crusades at, 230.  
Antipodes, 7.  
Antony, Mark, 101.  
Antwerp, 243.  
Apalachee Bay, De Soto on, 274.  
Apennines, 76.  
Apollo, 30.  
Appian Way, 5.  
Apprentice, 206.  
Aqueducts, 4, 103.  
Arabia, 224.  
Arabic figures, 225, 240.  
Arabs, 224-225; adopt learning of Greeks and Romans, 224; buildings of, 225; give people of Europe first ideas of chemistry, mathematics, and other scientific subjects, 225; tolerant of Christian religion, 225.  
Archbishop, 219.  
Arches, Roman, 106; triumphal, 110.  
Ariovistus, 95.  
Aristotle, 66.  
Arithmetic, Arabs excel in, 225.  
Armada, Spanish, 297, 302, 308-309, 312.  
Arno River, 76.  
Arthur, King, 143.  
Asia, 5, 8, 14, 20-23, 224; Alexander the Great carries Greek ideas into, 67-69; conquered by the Romans, 89.  
Asia Minor, 46, 232; Crusades in, 228; Greeks in, 27.  
Athena, 30.  
Athenians, 39-44; as merchants, 42; as philosophers, 42; education of the young, 40-41; public speaking among the, 39.  
Athens, 28, 37, 47, 51, 53, 63, 64, 65, 70; buildings and statues, 57-61; comparison of Sparta and, 39; influence upon the world of, 56-62; "long walls," 61.  
Attila, 133.  
Augsburg, 211.  
Augustine, missionary in England, 148.  
Augustus, Caesar, 101-102; statue of, 101.  
Axes, battle, 248.  
Aztecs, 269-270; Cortés conquers, 271.
- BABYLON, 20, 46.  
Balboa, Vasco Nunez de, 266-267; discovers the Pacific, 266.  
Barlow, 312.  
Bartholomew, brother of Columbus, 255.  
"Basilicas," 107.  
Baths, Roman, 108.  
Battering ram, 236.  
Bayard, Chevalier, 283-284.  
"Beggars," 299.  
Belgium, 211, 298; aids Holland, 300.  
Benedict, see St. Benedict.  
Bertha, 148.  
Bible, early printing of the, 249.

- Bishop of the Middle Ages, 218-219.  
 Black Sea, 242.  
 Blondel, 238-239.  
 Boniface, see *St. Boniface*.  
 Books, early, 248-249; of the Romans, 120-122.  
 Bosphorus, 132.  
 Boston, 286.  
 Bourbon, Duke of, and Chevalier Bayard, 284.  
 Bremen, 210.  
 Brenner Pass, 211.  
 Bristol, 213, 290.  
 Britain conquered by Angles and Saxons, 141-144.  
 British Isles, 2.  
 Britons, 97-98.  
 Britannia, 7; Caesar in, 97-98.  
 Bruges, 211.  
 Brutus, 101.  
 Buffalo, Coronado's army finds herds of, 277.  
 Buildings, of the Arabs, 225; of Athens, 57-61; Elizabethan, 295; of the Mexican Indians, 270; of Rome, 105-108; of Venice, 242.  
 Byzantium, 132.
- CABOT, John, finds North America, 290-291.  
 Cadiz, 243.  
 Caesar Augustus, see *Augustus Caesar*.  
 Caesar, Julius, 94-101; bust of, 95; conquers Gaul, 95-98; conquers Rome, 99; in Britannia, 97-98; death of, 99-101.  
 Calais, 309.  
 Calvin, John, 285, 292, 293; portrait, 293.  
 Calvinists, 292.  
 Canada, Cartier in, 285; Champlain in, 288.  
 Canary Islands, 257.  
 Cannae, battle of, 87.  
 Cannon, invention of, 250.  
 Canterbury Cathedral, 175, 221.  
 Canterbury Pilgrims, 223.  
 Capitoline Hill, 105.  
 Carcassonne, France, 203.  
 Carolinas, 313.  
 Carthage, 85; wars between Rome and, 86-89.  
 Cartier, Jacques, 284-285; portrait, 284.  
 Castles of the Middle Ages, 186-187.  
 Catacombs, 126.  
 Cathay (China), 245.  
 Cathedrals of Europe, 215-217.  
 Catholic Church, English Church separated from the, 293.  
 Catholics (Roman), 297, 298, 308; Belgians are, 298; in America, 294; Spain a nation of, 296, 297.  
 Châlons, 134.  
 Champlain, Samuel de, founds New France, 288-289.  
 Charlemagne, see *Charles the Great*.  
 Charles V of Spain, 282, 298; quarrel between Henry VIII and, 291.  
 Charles the Great (Charlemagne), 154-158; and Christianity, 156-157; crowned Emperor of Rome, 157.  
 Charles Martel, 155.  
 Charleston, 286.  
 Charter, The Great, see *Magna Carta*.  
 Chemistry, first ideas of from the Arabs, 225.  
 Children's Crusade, 239-240.  
 China, 8; or Cathay, 245; the Polos' visit to, 244-246.  
 Chivalry and knighthood of the Middle Ages, 194-196.  
 Christ, Jesus, 124, 227.  
 Christianity, 124-130, 224; Charles the Great an advocate of, 156-157; Germans and, 145-154; persecution of followers of, 125-126; tolerated by Arabs, 225; triumph of, 126-130.  
 Christians, 230. See also *Crusaders*.  
 Christians, and Turks battle for the Holy Land, 226; persecuted by Turks, 225.  
 Church of the Middle Ages, 215-220; buildings, 215-217, 242; clergy and pope, 218-220.  
 Cibolo, Seven Cities of, 275-277.  
 Cicero, 123.  
 Cincinnatus, 79.  
 "Circuses," 110.  
 Cities, founded by the Greeks, 28; of ancient Africa, 85.  
 Claudius Appius, 81.  
 Clergy of the Middle Ages, 185, 218-220.  
 Clermont, Council at, 226-227.  
 Clovis, 146-147, 154.  
 Cluny, monastery of, 152.  
 Coligny, Admiral, 286, 292.  
 Coliseum, 111.  
 Colleges, see *Schools*.  
 Cologne Cathedral, 217.  
 Colonies of England, 313.  
 Colonists, in America, first European, 9; Dutch, 303; English, 311-312, 313.  
 Columbian Exposition, 262.  
 Columbus, Bartholomew, 255.  
 Columbus, Christopher, 9, 247, 254-262, 265; America discovered by, 254, 257-261; Bahamas reached by, 259; Cuba reached by, 261; and son, Diego, at Palos, 256; first voyage of discovery of, 257-262; Genoa, birthplace of, 254; Indians and, 260; later voyages to America of, 262; Pinzon and, 256; Queen Isabella and, 256; returns to Spain, 261-262; sent back to Spain in chains, 262; sets sail from Spain, 257; seeks aid from Genoa and King of Portugal, 255; seeks aid from Spain, 255.  
 Commerce, Dutch and, 243; effect of Crusades upon, 243; English and, 243; in the Middle Ages, 208-213; leagues for protection of, 210; ocean, 243; routes of, 211; Commons, House of, established in England, 182.  
 Compass, early, 250; invention of the, 249; Marco Polo brings knowledge of, 249.  
 Congregationalists, 294.  
 Constantine, 128, 132.  
 Constantinople, 28, 132, 225, 229, 239, 242; Crusades in, 228.  
 "Consuls," Roman, 78.  
 Coriolanus, 79, 80.

- Coronado**, and expedition to find Seven Cities of Cibolo, 275-277; discovers Grand Cañon, 276; finds herds of buffalo, 277.
- Cortés, Hernando**, 269-271; and the Indians, 269; conquers the Aztecs, 271; death of, 271; discovers wonderful Indian city (Mexico), 270; in Mexico, 269-271; and Montezuma, 270-271; portrait, 269. "Council of Blood," 298.
- Crassus**, 94, 95, 98.
- Crete**, 27.
- Cross**, symbol of Crusades, 226.
- Crossbow**, 248.
- Crusades**, 221-243; beginning of, 226; at Antioch, 230; Children's, 239-240; at Constantinople, 228; First, 226-234; Second and Third, 234; first trained army, 229-230; Holy Lance of the, 230; Hungarians and, 228; at Jerusalem, 232; later, 230; result of, 240-243.
- Cuba**, Columbus discovers, 261.
- Cuneiform writing**, 22.
- Cuzco**, Pizarro reaches, 273.
- Da GAMA, Vasco**, 254.
- Danes**, 263; in England, 163-166.
- Danube**, 131, 132, 133.
- Darius, King**, 46, 50, 68.
- De Soto, Hernando**, 272, 273-275; death of, 274; discovers the Mississippi, 274; expedition of, 273-275; portrait, 273; sent to Inca, 272.
- Diana**, 30.
- Dias, Bartholomeu**, 254.
- "Dictator," 78.
- Diego**, son of Columbus, 256.
- Dikes**, of the Netherlands, 297; used in siege of Leiden, 301.
- Doge**, the, 241.
- Drake, Sir Francis**, 305-310; circumnavigates the globe, 306-307; Queen Elizabeth and, 306, 307; plunders ships of Spain, 306; portrait, 305; "singes the Spanish King's beard," 307-308.
- Druids**, 97.
- Dutch**, and ocean commerce, 243; New Netherland, colony of the, 303. See also *Netherlands, The*.
- EDUCATION**, encouraged by Alfred the Great, 166; among the Arabs, 225; of the young Athenian, 40-41; of Roman children, 118-119; in the monasteries, 153.
- Edward I, King**, 183.
- Egbert**, first king of England, 163.
- Egypt**, 14-20, 46; influence of Crusades on trade of, 241; kings, 17; pyramids, 15, 19; religion, 18.
- Egyptian builders**, 19.
- Elizabeth, Queen**, 293, 294-297; aids the Netherlands, 302; and Drake, 306, 307; and Raleigh, 310; character of, 295; Mary Queen of Scots and, 296-297; Puritans and, 295; Virginia named by, 312.
- Elizabethan palace**, 295.
- England**, 7, 10, 162-183; aids Dutch, 302; and France fight for control in America, 313-314; Angle-Land, 136, 144; Augustine, the missionary in, 148; Church of, see *English Church*; claims North America on discovery by Cabot, 291; colonies of, 313; Danes in, 163-166; effect of Norman conquest upon, 170-171; fights Spain on sea, 305-310; gains control of North America east of Mississippi, 314; gains control of New Netherland, 313; leader of Protestants, 297; ocean commerce and, 243; parliament of, 180-183; rival of Spain in Europe and America, 290-303.
- English Church**, followers of in America, 294; separated from Roman Catholic Church, 293.
- English language**, origin of, 170-171.
- Episcopilians**, 294.
- Ericson, Leif**, discovers America, 263.
- Eric the Red**, 263.
- Ethelbert**, 148.
- Euclid**, 72.
- Euphrates River**, 20.
- Europe**, 7; England and Spain rivals in, 290-303; France and Spain struggle for parts of, 282-289; primitive men of, 13-14; to-day, 2; war in, 5.
- "Excommunication," 218.
- Explorers of the New World**, Spanish, 265-277.
- FARMING in the Middle Ages**, 190-200.
- Feudalism**, 190-194; effect of discovery of cannon on, 250.
- Five Nations**, 288.
- Florence**, 212.
- Florida**, 313.
- "Folk-moot," 136.
- Fort Caroline**, 286.
- Forum**, 80, 105, 106.
- France**, 3, 136, 140; and England fight for control in America, 313-314; Cartier's voyage gave North American claims to, 284; Greeks in, 277; has firm hold in America, 289; possessions in, 1 America, 314; and Spain struggle for possessions in Europe and America, 282-289; Vikings in, 160.
- France**, Champlain founds New, 288-289.
- Francis I of France**, 282.
- Franks**, 136, 140, 154.
- Fredericka**, 313.
- Frederick Barbarossa**, 235, 242.
- French**, see *France*.
- French and Indian Wars**, 314.
- Fur trade**, Champlain encourages, 288, 289.
- Fur trader** in North America, 314.
- GAMA**, see *Da Gama*.
- Gaul**, 7; conquered by Caesar, 95-98.
- Gauls**, 82.
- Geese of Rome**, sacred, 83.
- Genoa**, 212, 239, 241, 242-243; birthplace of Columbus, 254; refuses to aid Columbus, 255; sea fight between Venice and, 242; and Venice enemies, 246.
- Geography**, early ideas of, 6-9.
- Georgia**, 313.

- Germans**, 135-162; and Christianity, 145-154; character of the ancient, 136; hero stories, 138-139; ideas of government of the ancient, 136-137; influence of Rome upon the, 145-161; names of the tribes, 136; religion, 138-139; villages, 137; wars between Romans and, 131-135.
- German tribes**, conquest of the, 139-144.
- Germany**, 3, 4, 7; discovery of printing in, 248.
- Ghent**, 211.
- Gilbert, Sir Humphrey**, 311.
- Gladiators**, 111-112.
- Gods**, Egyptian, 18; German, 138-139; Greek, 29-30; early Roman, 76.
- “Gold coast,” 253.
- “Golden fleece,” 32.
- Golden Hind**, the, 309.
- Gondolas**, 242.
- Good Hope**, Cape of, 254.
- Goths**, 133, 140.
- Gracchi**, The, 92-93.
- Grand Cañon**, Coronado discovers, 276.
- Greece**, 4-5, 7, 26; ancient, 26-28; attacked by the Persians, 46-55; cities of, 37; colonies of, 27-28; conquered by the Romans, 80; decline of, 63-73; government of, 37-39; influence of, upon world, 70; oracles, 44; Philip gains control of, 65; philosophers of, 42, 61. See also *Athens*.
- Greeks**, 24-73; alphabet of, 23; and athletics, 45; Arabs adopt learning of the, 224; heroes of the, 31-36; myths of the, 24-36; religion of the, 29-31.
- Greenland**, 263; Vikings in, 161.
- Gregory the Great**, 147.
- Gregory VII**, 220.
- Guidebooks**, beginning of the modern, 222.
- Guilds of the Middle Ages**, 205-208; training to become a member of, 206-207.
- Guinea, Gulf of**, 252.
- Gunpowder**, discovery of, 250.
- Gutenberg**, inventor of the printing press, 249.
- “**HADES**,” 29.
- Half-Moon**, 303.
- Hamburg**, 210.
- Hannibal**, 85-89; army of, 86-87; portrait, 86
- Hanseatic League**, 210.
- Harold**, 168.
- Hastings**, battle of, 168.
- Hawkins, Sir John**, 305; portrait, 306.
- Hebrews**, 22-23; religion, 22.
- Hector**, 33, 34.
- Helen of Troy**, 33, 35.
- Hellenes**, see *Greeks*.
- Hellenistic civilization**, spread of, 70-73.
- Hengist and Horsa**, 143.
- Henry, Prince**, 252-254, 255; establishes school of navigation, 252.
- Henry II**, 172-176, 193; established better courts, 173-174.
- Henry III**, 181-182; English barons rebel against, 182.
- Henry VII**, 290, 291.
- Henry VIII**, quarrel between Charles V of Spain and, 291; separates English Church from Roman, 293.
- “**Heptarchy**,” Saxon, 162.
- Herculaneum**, 113.
- Hercules**, 31.
- Hermann**, 131.
- Holland**, 298; discovery of printing in, 248; Spain makes peace with, 302; Spain recognizes independence of, 303.
- Holy Lance**, 230.
- Holy Land**, 226, 227, 232; early pilgrimages to the, 221-225.
- Homer**, 33.
- Horace**, 123.
- Horatius**, 79.
- Horsa**, 143.
- Howard, Lord**, 309, 310.
- Hudson, Henry**, 303.
- Huguenots**, 292; in Florida, 285.
- Hungarians and Crusaders**, 228.
- Hungary**, 134.
- Huns**, 132, 133; defeated at Châlons, 134.
- ICELAND**, Vikings in, 161, 263.
- Immigrants**, 11-12.
- Inca**, the, Pizarro captures, 272-273.
- India**, Da Gama reaches, 254; influence of Crusades on trade of, 24; race between Portugal and Spain to find, 252-264; Prince Henry seeks route to, 252-254.
- Indian Ocean**, 254.
- Indians**, 260, 261; Balboa and the, 266; Champlain and the, 288; Coronado and the, 275-276; Cortés and the, 260; De Soto and the, 274; missions among the, 279-280; Spaniards make slaves of, 277-280; Vikings and, 264. See also names of tribes.
- Indian Wars, French and**, 314.
- Industry in the towns of the Middle Ages**, 204-208.
- Innocent III**, 220.
- Inventions of the Fifteenth Century**, 247-251; printing one of the, 248-249; cannon one of the, 250; compass one of the, 249-250; Gutenberg printing press one of the, 249.
- Ireland**, Vikings in, 161.
- Iroquois**, 288.
- Isabella, Queen**, and Columbus, 256.
- Italians**, 140, 141.
- Italy**, 4, 7, 74-76, 212; Greeks in, 27; Spain and France fight over parts of, 282.
- JAMESTOWN**, 313.
- Japan**, 8.
- Jason**, 32.
- Jerusalem**, 22, 234; captured by Crusaders, 232; captured by Saladin's army, 235; Kingdom of, 232.
- Jesuits**, 293.
- Jesus**, 221, 224, 230, 232.
- John, King**, 176-180, 220; and Magna Carta, 179; and the pope, 176-177; revolt of subjects of, 177.
- Journeyman**, 206.
- Juno**, 29, 31.
- Jupiter**, see *Zeus*.
- KARNAK**, temple of, 19.
- Kings**, see names of.

- Knighthood of the Middle Ages, 194-196.  
Kublai Khan, 245.
- LA CHINE RAPIDS, Cartier discovers, 285.  
"Land of Columbia," 265.
- Lane, Ralph, 312.
- Langdon, Stephen, 176, 177.
- Las Casas, 278.
- Latium, 76.
- Leiden, siege of, 301; University at, 301.
- Leonidas, King, 51.
- Lighthouse or Pharos of Alexandria, 70.
- Lisbon, 243, 255.
- Lombards, 140.
- London, 212-213, 243.
- Longbow, 248.
- Louis, St., 193, 196.
- Loyola, 292.
- Lübeck, 210.
- Luther, Martin, 292, 293; portrait, 291.
- Lutherans, 292.
- MACEDONIA, 64; conquered by the Romans, 89.
- Magellan, 267-269; death of, 268; portrait, 268; reaches Philippine Islands, 268; seeks India, 268; voyage of, 267-269.  
"Magna Carta," 179-180.
- Manlius, Marcus, 83.
- Marathon, battle of, 47-49, 55.
- Mars, 30.
- Marseilles, 28.
- Mary, Queen of Scots, 293; Elizabeth and, 296-297.
- Maryland, Catholics in, 294.
- Massachusetts, 10.
- Master workman, 205, 206, 207.
- Mathematics, Arabs excel in, 225.
- Mavilla (Mobile), 274.
- Mayflower, 9, 10.
- Mecca, 221.
- Mediterranean Sea, 5, 7, 75, 85.
- Menelaus, 33, 35.
- Menendez, in Florida, 286.
- Mercury, 30.
- Mexico, 9, 291; cities of, 270; Cortés in, 269-271.
- Middle Ages, 141; castles, 186-187; chivalry and knighthood, 194-196; churches, 215-220; classes of people, 185-186; commerce, 208-213; farming, 199-200; feudalism, 190-194; guilds, 205; industry, 204-208; nobles, 185-196; people, 197-213; religion, 218-220; tournaments, 189-190; towns, 202-208; warfare, 188-189.
- Milan, 212; battle of, 283.
- Miltiades, 49.
- Missionaries, Christian, 147-149, 314.
- Missions, founding of, 277-280.
- Mississippi, 314; De Soto discovers, 274-275.
- Mobile (Mavilla), De Soto at, 274.
- Mohammed, 221, 224.
- Monasteries as schools, 153.
- Monks, 149-154; education among the, 153.
- Montezuma, Cortés and, 270-271; death of, 271.
- "Mont Real" (Montreal), 285.
- "Moors" of Spain, 225, 240.
- Moot, see *Folk-moot*.
- Movable towers, 235, 236.
- Mythology, German, 138-139; Greek, 24-36; Roman, 77-80.
- NAPLES, Bay of, 112.
- Navigation, Prince Henry establishes school of, 252.
- Negroes as slaves, Spain imports, 279.
- Neptune, 29, 35.
- Nero, 125-126; portrait, 125.
- Netherlands, The, Belgians aid, 300; defeat Spain, 301; England aids, 302; by William the Silent against Spain, 299-302; Philip II oppresses, 298-299; revolt of the, 297-299; struggle between Spain and, 297-303.
- New England States, 10.
- Newfoundland, Cartier in, 284.
- New Netherland, Dutch colony of, 303; gained by the English, 313.
- New York, 11, 286, 303.
- Nicæa, 228; Turks capture, 230.
- Nile River, 15, 19.
- Niña, 257.
- Nineveh, 20.
- Nobles of the Middle Ages, 185-196.
- Norman conquest, effect upon England, 170, 171.
- Normandy, 161.
- Normans, 161; in England, 167-171.
- Northmen, 158-161; in England, 163-166; religion of, 158; voyages of, 262-264.
- North Sea, 297.
- Norwegians, 263.
- Norwich, 213.
- Nuremberg, Germany, 203, 211.
- OLYMPIA, 45.
- Olympic games, 45.
- Olympus, Mt., 28, 29.
- Oracles, Greek, 44.
- Oxen, crooked-back, see *Buffalo*.
- PACIFIC OCEAN, 267; Magellan names, 268.
- Palestine, 22, 46.
- Palos, 257; Columbus at, 256.
- Panama, Balboa sets out for the Isthmus of, 266; Pizarro in, 271.
- Pantheon, 106, 107.
- Paris, 3, 213.
- Paris, son of Priam, 33.
- Parliament of England, 180-183; has two houses, 183; House of Commons established, 182; origin of, 180.
- Parthenon, 59.
- Patagonia, 268.
- Patricians, 80.
- Patroclus, 34.
- Paul, St., 125, 126, 221.
- Peasants of the Middle Ages, 185, 197-202.
- Pelican, 306, 307.
- Penelope, 35.
- Pennsylvania, Presbyterians in, 294.
- Pericles, Age of, 56, 61.
- Persia, influence of Crusades on trade of, 241.

- Persians**, attack Greece, 46–55; overcome by Alexander, 68.
- Peru**, 291; Pizarro in, 272.
- Peter, St.**, 125, 126, 221.
- Peter the Hermit**, 227, 228.
- Phalanx**, Macedonian, 64.
- Pharos or lighthouse of Alexandria**, 70.
- Phidias**, 50, 61.
- Philadelphia**, 11.
- Philip Augustus**, 235, 236, 237, 241.
- Philip of Macedon**, 64–65; portrait, 65.
- Philip II of Spain**, 286, 298; portrait, 297; prepares to fight England, 297, 307, 308.
- Philippine Islands**, Magellan reaches, 268.
- Philosophers**, Greek, 42, 61. See also names of.
- Phoenicia**, 46.
- Phoenicians**, 22–23, 85; alphabet of, 23.
- Picts and Scots**, 142.
- Pilgrims**, settlers at Plymouth, 10.
- Pilgrims** (Christian), 221–243; guidebooks of, 222; journeys of the, 221–224; shrines visited by, 222.
- Pinta**, 257, 261.
- Pinzon**, and Columbus, 256.
- Pizarro, Francisco**, 271–273; captures the Inca, 272–273; in Cuzco, 273; death of, 273; makes expedition along coast of South America, 271; in Peru, 272; portrait, 272.
- Plataea**, 47.
- Plato**, 42, 60, 61.
- Plebeians**, 80.
- Plow**, 248.
- Pluto**, 29.
- Plymouth, Mass.**, 10, 313.
- Pnyx** (hill), 39.
- Po River**, 76.
- Pocahontas**, 313.
- Pole, Reginald**, 293; portrait, 292.
- Polo, Marco**, 244–247; as a youth, 245; brings knowledge of compass from China, 249; captured by Genoese, 247; in the Far East, 246; printing of book of, 248; writes of travels in prison, 247.
- Polos**, visit to China of the, 244–246.
- Pompeii**, destruction of, 112–114.
- Pompey**, 94, 95, 98, 99; bust of, 94; defeated by Caesar, 99.
- Ponce de Leon**, 273.
- Pope**, 210–220.
- Portugal**, refuses to aid Columbus, 255; and Spain race to find India, 252–264.
- Portuguese and ocean commerce**, 243.
- Poseidon**, temple of, 25.
- Potato**, 312.
- Presbyterians**, 292, 294.
- Priam**, king of Troy, 33.
- Priest**, 218.
- Printing**, discovery of, 248–249.
- Protestants**, 292, 298, 308; England leader of, 297; Hollanders are, 298.
- Ptolemy, Claudius**, 70, 72, 73; portrait, 72.
- Public speaking among the Athenians**, 39.
- Puritans and Elizabeth**, 294–295.
- Pyramids of Egypt**, 15, 19.
- QUEBEC**, Champlain at, 288.
- RALEIGH, Sir Walter**, 310–312; as a soldier, 310; and Queen Elizabeth, 310; tries to plant colonies in America, 311–312.
- Rameses II**, 17, 18.
- Reformation**, 291–294; leaders of the, 292–293.
- Religion**, 10; Calvinist, 292; Catholic, 292; Christian, 224; Congregational, 294; Egyptian, 18; Episcopalian, 294; of the Germans, 138–139; Greek, 29–31; Hebrew, 22; Lutheran, 292; of the Middle Ages, 218–220; of the Northmen, 158; period of the Reformation in, 291–294; Presbyterian, 292, 294; Protestant, 292; Puritan, 294; early Roman, 76.
- Rhine River**, 3, 131, 132, 133, 211, 297.
- Richard the Lion-Hearted**, 176, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 241; Blondel the favorite minstrel of, 238–239; treaty between Saladin and, 237.
- Roads**, Roman, 4, 103.
- Rollo**, 160.
- Roman Catholic Church**, see *Catholic Church*.
- Roman Empire**, boundary of the, 102; how the Roman Republic became the, 94–104.
- Roman numerals**, 240.
- Romans**, adopt Greek art, 120; alphabet, 23; amusements of the, 110–112; Arabs adopt learning of the, 224; books, 120–122; clothing, 116–117, 118; conquest of the, 85–93; education of children, 118–119; effect of victory upon the, 90–93; houses, 114–116; method of fighting, 89–90; mythology, 77–80; religion, 76; types of soldiers, 90; wars between Carthaginians and, 86–89; wars between Germans and, 131–135; writers, 120–124.
- Roman triumph**, what it meant, 109.
- Rome**, 4, 7, 74–135, 221; aqueducts of, 103; baths of, 108; conquered by Caesar, 99; decline of, 130–132; downfall of, 132–135; government of, 80–82; influence of upon the Teutons, 145–161; laws of, 81; plan of the city of, 105; plebeians of, 80; patricians of, 80; temples and public buildings of, 105–108; tribunes of, 81; siege of Gauls, 82–83; wars between Carthage and, 86–89.
- Romulus**, 78; and Remus, 77.
- Rosetta stone**, 16.
- Rubicon**, 90.
- Runnymede**, battle of, 177.
- SACRED WAY**, see *Via Sacra*.
- St. Albans' monastery**, 153.
- St. Augustine**, settled by Menendez, 286.
- St. Benedict**, 151.
- St. Bernard**, 234.
- St. Boniface**, missionary, 148.
- St. Johns River**, 286.
- St. Lawrence region**, French in, 314.
- St. Lawrence River**, Cartier discovers the, 285.
- St. Mark's Church**, 242.
- St. Mark's Piazza**, 242.
- Saladin**, 234, 235, 236; treaty between Richard the Lion-Hearted and, 237.
- Salamis**, battle of, 53, 55.

- Santa Maria, 257.  
Santo Domingo, Balboa settles in, 266.  
Saxons, 136. See also *Anglo-Saxons*.  
Scandinavia, 158.  
Schools, Arabian, 225; established by Alfred the Great, 166; at Leiden, 301; monasteries as, 153; built by Spaniards in Peru and Mexico, 280. See also *Education*.  
Scotland, 142; Vikings in, 101.  
Scots, Picts and, 142; revolt against Mary, 206.  
Senate, Roman, 78.  
Serfs, 108-109.  
Shetland Islands, 7.  
Sicily, 74, 85; Greeks in, 27.  
Sidney, Sir Philip, aids Dutch, 302.  
Simon de Montfort, Earl, 182; establishes House of Commons, 182; leads English against Henry III, 182; portrait, 182.  
Slaves, Indians as, 277-280; Las Casas friend of, 278; negroes as, 279.  
Socrates, 42, 60, 61-62.  
Song of the Nibelungs, 138-139.  
South America, expedition of Pizarro along coast of, 271; Vespuccius coasts along shore of, 265.  
South Sea, 267.  
Spain, 22; Armada of, 308-309; Columbus seeks aid from, 255; De Soto's expedition extends North American claims for, 275; Drake plunders ships of, 306; Drake burns ships of, at Cadiz, 308; Dutch defeat, 301; and England rivals in Europe and America, 290-303; and England in sea fight, 305-310; and France struggle for possession in America, 282-289; gives up position as leader in Europe, 310; Greeks in, 27; imports negroes from Africa as slaves, 279; leader of Catholics, 297; loss incurred in Spanish-American War by, 310; makes last effort to retain colonies in Spanish-American War, 314; Mexican mines enrich, 271; Pizarro and King of, 271; and Portugal race to find India, 252-264; a Roman Catholic nation, 296; makes peace with Holland, 302; and its wars, 303; weakened by wars, 313; William the Silent leads Dutch against, 299-302.  
Spaniards, 140, 141; and Indian slavery, 277-280.  
Spanish-American War, 310, 314.  
Spanish explorers of the New World, 265-277.  
Sparta, 37, 47, 51, 64; comparison of Athens and, 30; "walls of," 44.  
Spartans, 39, 42-44; as soldiers, 51-52; at Thermopylae, 50-52; training of the young, 42-43.  
Sphinx, 15.  
Spinning wheel, 248.  
"Stoics," 124.  
Stone-hurling machine, 235, 236.  
Syracuse, 27.  
  
TARQUIN family, 79.  
Tarquin the Proud, 78.  
Teutons, see *Germans*.  
Thebes, 64, 65.  
Themistocles, 50, 53.  
Thermopylae, Spartans hold pass at, 50-52.  
Theseus, 32.  
"The Ten," 81, 82.  
Thirty Years' War, close of the, 302-303.  
Thomas à Becket, 175, 221; pilgrims at shrine of, 224.  
Thule, Ultima, 7.  
Tiber River, 76.  
Tigris River, 20.  
Tobacco, 312.  
"Toga," 102, 117.  
Tournament, The, 189-190.  
Towns of the Middle Ages, 202-208; industry in, 204-208.  
Trade, see *Commerce*.  
Tribunes, 81.  
Triumph, Roman, 109-110.  
Troy, Siege of, 33-36.  
Turks, and Christians, 227-243; capture Nicaea, 230.  
"ULTIMA THULE," 7.  
Ulysses, 33, 34, 35.  
"Union of Utrecht," 300.  
Universities, Arabian, 225.  
University of Leiden, 301.  
Urban, Pope, calls council at Clermont, 226.  
  
VASSAL, 191-192.  
Vatican, 219.  
Venice, 212, 239, 241-242; and Genoa enemies, 246; fight between Genoa and, 242.  
Venus, 30.  
Venus di Milo, 26.  
Vercingetorix, 96.  
Vergil, 122.  
Verrazano, 282.  
Vespuccius, Americus, 265.  
Vesuvius, Mt., 113.  
"Veto," 81.  
Via Sacra, 109.  
Vikings, 150-160, 161, 163, 166, 263; and Indians, 264.  
Vinland, 263.  
Virginia, origin of name, 312; Presbyterians in, 294.  
Vulcan, 30, 34.  
  
WALTER the Penniless, 227, 228.  
Warfare in the Middle Ages, 188-189.  
War in Europe, 5.  
Washington, William the Silent likened to, 300.  
Welsh, 144.  
Westphalia, Treaty of, 303.  
White, John, 312.  
William the Conqueror, 168, 169, 171, 181.  
William the Silent, 299-302; at Leiden, 301; death of, 302.  
Writing, art of, 248.  
  
XERXES, 50; army of, 50, 51; returns to Asia, 54.  
  
YORK, England, 203.  
  
ZAMA, battle of, 88.  
Zeus, 29, 30.  
Zunis, 276.





11

165

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 018 487 769 7